

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES • VOLUME 13

GREGORIUS AND THE LAMENT

HARTMANN VON AUE

Gregorius · Büchlein

Gregorius and the Lament

The Good Sinner, with the Debate of the Body and the Heart

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

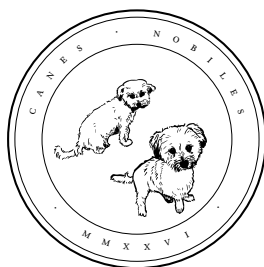


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 13 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Gregorius von Hartmann von Aue,
herausgegeben von Hermann Paul, fünfte Auflage, Altdeutsche Textbibliothek 2
(Halle: Max Niemeyer, 1919); Der arme Heinrich und die Büchlein
von Hartmann von Aue, herausgegeben von Moriz Haupt, zweite Auflage
besorgt von E. Martin (Leipzig: S. Hirzel, 1881), the first Büchlein

Set from page scans of those printings

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as the editors number them, every fifth verse
in the outer margin. Paul marks an unstressed e that the verse slurs with a dot
beneath it, and secludes in square brackets the verses he holds spurious;
both are printed as he prints them. A verse the manuscript lost,
which Martin counts and marks with a row of dots, is set as three asterisks
and glossed as a lacuna. The paragraphs are the editors' own indented breaks;
the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.
Hartmann's first Büchlein is known in English as the Lament.

CONTENTS

GREGORIUS

I · Hartmann's Prologue	9
II · The Children of Aquitaine	20
III · The Devil's Work	28
IV · The Wise Man's Counsel	41
V · The Tablet and the Cask	51
VI · The Lady's Three Sorrows	59
VII · The Fishermen and the Abbot	68
VIII · The Foundling's Schooling	83
IX · Monk or Knight	96
X · The Tablet Read, and the Voyage	113
XI · The Besieged City	125
XII · The Duke Taken	138
XIII · The Marriage	148

GREGORIUS

(continued)

XIV · The Maid Who Watched	156
XV · Mother and Wife	170
XVI · The Fisherman by the Lake	184
XVII · The Rock and the Key	197
XVIII · The Envoys from Rome	209
XIX · The Key in the Fish	217
XX · The Tablet in the Nettles	232
XXI · The Pope and His Mother	248

BÜCHLEIN

I · The Prologue, and the Body's Complaint	267
II · The Body's Complaint: The Lady's Silence	276
III · The Body's Complaint: The Heart's Tyranny	288
IV · The Heart's Answer	298
V · The Heart's Answer: The Flower in the Snow	309
VI · The Heart Relents, and the Body Yields	323
VII · Question and Answer	338
VIII · The Magic of Three Herbs	347
IX · The Body's Oath	354
X · The Heart's Last Counsel	365
XI · The Song to the Lady	372

HARTMANN VON AUE

Gregorius

Hartmann's Prologue

I

Hartmann regrets the worldly poems of his youth and warns against sinning in the hope of atoning in old age, since death can come suddenly. No sin is too great to be forgiven if it is repented, except despair, which blocks the way back to God. He tells of a man left half dead by murderers: God sends him hope and fear, oil and wine are poured into his wounds, and grace carries him home to be healed. Then Hartmann names himself and begins the tale of the good sinner.

Mîn herze hât betwungen

My heart has compelled

dicke mîne zungen,

often my tongue,

daz sî des vil gesprochen hât

that it of-that much spoken has

daz nâch der werlde lône stât.

which after the world's reward stands.

daz rieten im diu tumben jâr.

that counseled him the foolish years.

nu weiz ich daz wol für wâr:

now know I that well for true:

swer durch des helleschergen rât

whoever through the hell-bailiff's counsel

den trôst ze sîner jugent hât

the confidence in his youth has

daz er dar ûf sündet,

that he there upon sins,

als in diu jugent schündet,

as him the youth urges,

daz er gedenket dar an

that he thinks there on

‘du bist noch ein junger man;

‘thou art still a young man;

5

10

aller dîner missetât

of-all thy misdeed

der wirt noch vil guot rât;

of-it becomes yet very good remedy;

15 du gebüezest in dem alter wol,

thou atonest in the age well,

der gedenket anders denne er sol.

he thinks otherwise than he should.

er wirt es lîhte entsetzet;

he becomes of-it perhaps deprived;

wande in des willen letzet

for him of-the purpose robs

diu êhafte nôt,

the binding necessity,

20 sô der bitterlîche tât

when the bitter death

den fürgedanc richet

the forethought punishes

und im daz leben brichet

and for-him the life breaks

mit einem snellen ende.

with a swift end.

der gnâden ellende

the of-grace exiled-one

25 hât danne den bœsern teil erkorn.

has then the worse part chosen.

und wære aber er geborn

and were however he born

von Adâme mit Abêle

from Adam with Abel

und soltę mit im sîn sêle

and should with him his soul

weren âne sünden slac

last without sin's blow

unz an den jungesten tac,

until to the last day,

sô hæte er niht ze vil gegeben

so would-have he not too much given

umb daz êwige leben,

for the eternal life,

daz anegenges niht enhât

which beginning not has

und ouch niemer zergât.

and also never passes-away.

Durch daz wære ich gerne bereit

For that would-be I gladly ready

ze sprechennę die wârheit,

to speak the truth,

daz ez gotes wille wære

that it God's will were

und daz diu grôze swære

and that the great grief

der süntlichen bürde

of-the sinful burden

ein teil ringer würde,

a part lighter should-become,

die ich durch mîne müezekeit

which I through my idleness

ûf mich mit worten hân geleit.

upon me with words have laid.

30

35

40

wan dâ enzwîvel ich niht an:

for there doubt I not on:

als uns got an einem man

as to-us God in one man

45 erzeiget und bewæret hât,

shown and proven has,

so enwart nie mannes missetât

so was never man's misdeed

in der werlde sô grôz,

in the world so great,

ern werde ir ledic unde blôz,

unless-he become of-it free and bare,

ob sie in von herzen riuwet

if it him from heart rues

50 und sî niht wider niuwet.

and it not again renews.

von dem ich iu nu sagen wil,

of whom I to-you now tell will,

des schulde was grôz unde vil,

whose guilt was great and much,

daz sî vil starc ze hœrenne ist,

so-that it very hard to hear is,

wan daz man sî durch einen list

except that one it for a purpose

55 niht verswîgen getar:

not keep-silent dares:

daz dâ bî neme war

that there by may-take heed

alliu sündigiu diet

all sinful folk

die der tiuvel verriet

whom the devil betrayed

ûf den wec der helle,

onto the way of hell,

ob ir dehein noch welle

if of-them any yet will

60

diu gotes kint mêren

the God's children increase

und selbe wider kêren

and himself back turn

ûf der sælden strâze,

onto the salvation's road,

daz er den zwîvel lâze,

that be the despair may-abandon,

der manegen versenket.

which many-a-one sinks.

65

swer sich bedenket

whoever himself betinks

houbethafter missetât,

of-capital misdeed,

der er vil lîhte manege hât,

of-which be very likely many has,

sô tuot er wider dem gebote,

so does he against the commandment,

und verzwîvelt er an gote,

and (if)-despairs be of God,

70

daz er sîn niht enruoche,

that be of-it not cares,

ob er genâde suoche,

whether be grace seek,

und entriuwet niemer wider komen.

and trusts never back to-come.

sô hât der zwîvel im benomen

so has the despair from-bim taken

den wuocher der riuwe.

the yield of-the rue.

75

daz ist diu wâre triuwe

that is the true faithfulness

die er ze gote solde hân:

which he toward God should have:

buoꝛe nâch bihte bestân.

penance after confession undertake.

wan diu vil bitter süeze

for the very bitter sweetness

80 twinget sîne füeze

compels his feet

ûf den gemächlichern wec:

onto the easier way:

der enhât stein noch stec,

that has-not stone nor footbridge,

mos gebirge noch walt;

bog mountains nor forest;

der enhât ze heiz noch ze kalt;

it has-not too hot nor too cold;

85 man vert in âne des lîbes nôt,

one travels it without the body's distress,

er leitet aber ûf den êwegen tôt.

it leads however to the eternal death.

Sô ist der sælden strâze

So is the salvation's road

in eteslîcher mâze

in some measure

beide rûch und enge.

both rough and narrow.

90 die muoz man die lenge

that must one the length

wallen unde klimmen,

journey and climb,

waten unde swimmen,

wade and swim,

unz daz sî in hin leitet

until that it him thither leads

dâ sî sich wol breitet

where it itself well widens

ûz disem ellende

out-of this exile

an ein vil süezez ende.

to a very sweet end.

den selben wec geriet ein man:

the same way came-onto a man:

ze rechter zît er entran

at right time he escaped

ûz der mordære gewalt.

out-of the murderers' power.

er was komen in ir gehalt:

he was come into their keeping:

dâ hâten sî in nider geslagen

there had they him down struck

und im vrävellîche entragen

and from-him boldly carried-off

aller sîner sinne kleit

of-all his senses clothing

und hâten in an geleit

and had him on laid

die marterlîchen wunden.

the tormenting wounds.

ez was zuo den stunden

it was at the hours

sîner sêle armuot vil grôz.

his soul's poverty very great.

sus liezen sî in *** blôz

thus left they him (lacuna) bare

unde halp tât ligen.

and half dead lie.

95

100

105

- 110 dô hâte im got niht verzigē
then had to-him God not denied
 sîner gewonlîcher erbarmekeit
of-his customary mercy
 und sante im disiu zwei kleit,
and sent to-him these two garments,
 gedingen unde vorhte,
hope and fear,
 diu got selbe worhte,
which God himself wrought,
- 115 daz sî im ein schirm wæren
that they to-him a shield were
 und allen sündæren:
and to-all sinners:
 vorhte daz er ersturbe,
fear that he should-die,
 gedinge daz er niht verdurbe.
hope that he not should-perish.
 vorhte liez in dâ niht ligen.
fear let him there not lie.
- 120 doch wære er wider gesigen,
yet would-have he back sunk,
 wan daz der gedinge
but that the hope
 machte in alsô ringe
made him so light
 daz er doch weibende saz:
that he yet swaying sat:
 dar zuo sô starkte in baz
there to so strengthened him further
- 125 diu geistliche triuwe
the spiritual faithfulness
 gemischet mit der riuwe.
mixed with the rue.

sî tâten im vil guotes

they did for-him much of-good

und erfurhten in des bluotes.

and cleansed him of-the blood.

sî guzzen im in die wunden sîn

they poured for-him into the wounds his

beidiu öl unde wîn.

both oil and wine.

130

diu salbe ist linde und tuot doch wê,

the salve is soft and does yet woe,

daz öl diu gnâde, der wîn diu ê,

the oil the grace, the wine the law,

die der sündære haben muoz:

whiche the sinner have must:

sô wirt im siechtuomes buoz.

so becomes to-him of-sickness remedy.

alsus huop in bî sîner hant

thus lifted him by his hand

135

diu gotes gnâde als si in vant

the God's grace as she him found

ûf ir miltez ahselbein

onto her bountiful shoulder

und truog in durch beruochen hein.

and carried him for tending home.

dâ wurden im verbunden

there were for-him bound-up

sîne verwunden,

his mortal-wounds,

140

daz er âne mâsen genas

so-that he without scars recovered

und sît ein wârer kempfe was

and afterward a true champion was

er eine über al die kristenheit.

he alone over all the Christendom.

noch enhân ich iu niht geseit,
yet have I to-you not said,

145 welch die wunden sint gewesen
which the wounds have been

der er sô kûme ist genesen,
from-which he so barely is recovered,

wie er die wunden emphie
how he the wounds received

und wie er sich der wunden ergie
and how he himself of-the wounds rid

ân den êwigen tôten.
without the eternal death.

150 des ist ze hœrenne nôten
of-that is to hear need

und ze merkenne in allen
and to mark for-them all

die dâ sint vervallen
who there are fallen

under bercswæren schulden,
under mountain-heavy guilts,

ob er ze gotes hulden
if he to God's favor

155 dannoch wider gâhet,
still back hastens,

daz in got gerne emphâhet.
that him God gladly receives.

wan sîner genâden ist sô vil,
for of-his grace is so much,

daz er des niht enwil

that be of-that not wills

und ez gar verboten hât

and it wholly forbidden has

daz man durch deheine missetât

that one for any misdeed

160

an im iht zwîvelhaft bestê.

in him at-all despairing remain.

ez enist dehein sünde mê,

there is no sin more,

man enwerde ir mit der riuwe

one unless-become of-it with the rue

ledic unde niuwe,

free and new,

schoene unde reine,

fair and pure,

165

niuwan der zwîvel eine,

except the despair alone,

der ist ein mortgalle

that is a murderous-gall

ze dem êwigen valle,

to the eternal fall,

den niemen mac gesüezen

which no-one can sweeten

noch wider got gebüezen.

nor toward God atone.

170

Der dise rede berihte,

He-who this tale set-in-order,

in tiusche getihte,

in German poetry,

daz was von Ouwe Hartman.

that was of Aue Hartmann.

hie hebent sich von êrste an

here begin themselves from first on

175 diu seltsænen mære

the strange tales

von dem guoten sündære.

of the good sinner.

The Children of Aquitaine

II

A lord of Aquitaine has a son and a daughter of unmatched beauty, and their mother dies in bearing them. When the children are ten, the father falls ill, summons his lords, and weeps over them. He charges his son with a lord's virtues and with the care of his sister, and he dies. The brother keeps his sister with every comfort. They share all things, table and chamber alike, are never apart, and love each other deeply.

Ez ist ein wälhischez lant

It is a Romance land

Equitânjâ genant

Aquitaine named

und lît dem mere unverre:

and lies to-the sea not-far:

180 des selben landes herre

of-the same land lord

gewan bî sînem wîbe

got by his woman

zwei kint diu an ir lîbe

two children who in their body

niht schœner mohten sîn,

not fairer could be,

einen sun und ein tohterlîn.

a son and a little-daughter.

der kinde muoter starp,

the children's mother died,

185

dô si in daz leben vol erwarp.

when she for-them the life fully won.

Dô diu kint wâren

When the children were

komen ze zehen jâren,

come to ten years,

do ergreif den vater ouch der tôt.

then seized the father also the death.

dô er im sîne kunft enbôt,

when he to-him his coming announced,

190

sô daz er in geleite

so that he him laid-low

dâ er von siecheite

where he from sickness

sich des tôdes entstuont,

himself of-the death perceived,

dô tet er sam die wîsen tuont:

then did he as the wise do:

zehant er besande

at-once he summoned

195

die besten von dem lande

the best of the land

den er getrûwen solde

whom he trust should

und in bevelhen wolde

and to-them entrust would

sîne sêle und ouch diu kint.

his soul and also the children.

nu daz sî für in komen sint,

now that they before him come are,

200

mâge man und dienstman,

kinsmen liegemen and ministerials,

sîniu kint sach er dô an:

bis children looked he then at:

diu wâren gelîche

they were alike

sô rehte wûnneclîche

so truly delightfully

205 gerâten an dem lîbe

turned-out in the body

daz einem herten wîbe

that for-a hard woman

ze lachenne wære geschehen,

to laugh would-have happened,

ob sî sî müese an sehen.

if she them should-have-to at look.

Daz machte sînem herzen

That made for-his heart

210 vil bitterlîchen smerzen:

very bitter pain:

des herren jâmer wart sô grôz,

the lord's misery became so great,

daz im der ougen regen vlôz

that from-him of-the eyes rain flowed

nider ûf die bettewât.

down upon the bedclothes.

er sprach 'nu enist des niht rât,

he said 'now is of-it no remedy,

215 ichn müeze von iu scheiden.

unless-I must from you part.

nu solt ich mit iu beiden

now should I with you both

alrêrst vröuden walten

only-now of-joys have-command

und wûnneclîchen alten.

and delightfully grow-old.

der trôst ist nu zergangen:

the confidence is now vanished:

mich hât der tôt gevangen.’

me has the death caught.’

nu bevalch er sî bî handen

now entrusted he them by hands

den herren von den landen

to-the lords of the lands

die durch in dar wâren komen.

who for him there were come.

hie wart grôz weinen vernomen.

here was great weeping heard.

ir jâmer zuo den triuwen

their misery with the faithfulness

schuof dâ grôz riuwen.

caused there great rue.

alle die dâ wâren

all who there were

die begunden sô gebâren,

they began so to-behave,

als ein ingesinde guot

as a housebold good

umbe ir lieben herren tuot.

for their dear lord does.

Als er diu kint weinen sach,

When he the children weep saw,

zuo sînem sun er dô sprach

to his son he then spoke

‘sun war umbe weinest du?

‘son what for weapest thou?

jâ gevellet dir nu

indeed falls to-thee now

mîn lant und michel êre.

my land and great honor.

220

225

230

235

jâ fürhte ich harte sêre
indeed fear I very sorely

dîner schoenen swester.
for-thy fair sister.

des ist mîn jâmer vester
therefore is my misery firmer

und beginnez nu ze spâte klagen
and begin-it now too late to-lament

240 daz ich ze allen mînen tagen
that I in all my days

ir dinc niht baz geschaffet hân:
her affairs not better arranged have:

daz ist unväterlich getân.
that is unfatherly done.'

Er nam sî beidiu bî der hant,
He took them both by the hand,

er sprach 'sun, nu wis gemant
he said 'son, now be reminded

245 daz du behaltest mêre
that thou keep evermore

die jungesten lêre
the last teaching

die dir dîn vater tæte.
which to-thee thy father gave.

wis getriuwe, wis stæte,
be faithful, be constant,

wis milte, wis diemüete,
be bountiful, be humble,

250 wis vrävele mit güete,
be bold with goodness,

wis dîner zuht wol behuot,
be of-thy breeding well mindful,

den herren starc, den armen guot.
to-the lords strong, to-the poor good.

die dînen solt du êren,

the thine shalt thou honor,

die vremeden zuo dir kêren,

the strangers to thee turn,

wis den wîsen gerne bî,

be the wise gladly by,

vliuch den tumben swâ er sî.

flee the fool wherever he be.

vor allen dingen minne got,

before all things love God,

rihte wol durch sîn gebot.

judge well for his commandment.

ich bevilhe dir die sêle mîn

I entrust to-thee the soul mine

und diz schœne kint die swester dîn,

and this fair child the sister thine,

daz du dich wol an ir bewarst

that thou thyself well toward her keep

und ir bruoderlîchen mite varst.

and her brotherly with fare.

sô geschiht iu beiden wol.

so befalls you both well.

got dem ich erbarmen sol,

God to-whom I move-to-pity shall,

der geruoche iuwer beider pflegen'.

he deign of-you both to-care-for'.

hie mite was ouch im gelegen

here with was also for-him lain-still

diu sprâche und des herzen kraft,

the speech and the heart's strength,

und schiet sich diu geselleschaft,

and parted itself the companionship,

beidiu sêle unde lîp.

both soul and body.

255

260

265

- 270 hie weinten man unde wîp.
here wept man and woman.
- ein solhe bivilde er nam,
a such burial he received,
- so ez landes herren wol gezam.
as it land's lord well befitted.
- Nu daz disiu rîchiu kint
Now that these rich children
- sus beidenthalp verweiset sint,
thus on-both-sides orphaned are,
- 275 der junkherre sich underwant
the young-lord himself took-charge
- sîner swester dâ zehant
of-his sister there at-once
- und pflag ir so er beste mohte,
and cared-for her as he best could,
- als sînen triuwen tohte.
as his faithfulness befitted.
- er volzôch ir muote
he fulfilled her spirit
- 280 mit lîbe und mit guote;
with body and with goods;
- sine wart von im beswæret nie.
she was by him burdened never.
- er phlac ir sô (ich sage iu wie),
he cared-for her so (I tell you how),
- daz er sî nihtes entwerte
that he her of-nothing refused
- swes sî an in gerte
whatever she of him desired
- 285 von kleidern und von gemache.
of clothes and of comfort.

sî wâren aller sache

they were in-all things

gesellic und gemeine,

companionable and sharing,

sî wâren selten eine,

they were seldom alone,

sî wonten zallen zîten

they dwelt at-all times

einander bî sîten

each-other by side

(daz gezam vil wol in beiden),

(that befitted very well them both),

sî wâren ungescheiden

they were unparted

ze tische unde ouch anderswâ.

at table and also elsewhere.

ir bette stuonden alsô nâ

their beds stood so near

daz sî sich mochten undersehen.

that they each-other could see.

man enmac im anders niht gejeihen,

one can of-him otherwise not say,

erne phlæge ir alsô wol

unless-be tended her as well

als ein getriuwer bruoder sol

as a faithful brother should

sîner lieben swester:

his dear sister:

noch was diu liebe vester

yet was the love firmer

die sî im dâ wider truoc.

which she to-him there back bore.

wünne heten sî genuoc.

delight had they enough.

290

295

300

The Devil's Work

III

The devil, envious of their happiness, turns the brother's love toward his sister, aided by her beauty and his youth. One night he creeps into her bed and, while she wavers between keeping silent and crying out, overpowers her. The devil urges them on until the sin pleases them. When she finds she is pregnant, both despair, and Hartmann warns men against intimacy with sisters and nieces. She begs her brother to save the child, and he proposes asking his father's counselor.

Dô dise wünne und den gemach

When this delight and the comfort

der werlde vîent ersach,

the world's enemy saw,

305 der durch hôchvart und durch nît

who through pride and through envy

versigelt in der helle lît,

sealed in the hell lies,

ir beider êren in verdrôz

their both honor him vexed

(wan sî dûhte in alze grôz)

(for it seemed to-him all-too great)

und erzeugte sîn gewonheit;

and showed his custom;

310 wan im was ie und noch ist leit

for to-him was ever and still is sorrow

swâ iemen kein guot geschiht,

wherever to-anyone any good befalls,

unde enhenget sîn niht

and permits it not

swâ erz mac erwenden.

wherever he-it can prevent.

sus gedâhte er sî phenden

thus thought he them to-rob

ir fröuden unde ir êren,

of-their joys and of-their honor,

315

ob er möhte verkêren

if he could turn

ir vröude ûf ungewinne.

their joy to loss.

an sîner swester minne

toward his sister's love

sô riet er im ze verre,

so counseled he him too far,

unz daz der junkherre

until that the young-lord

320

verkêrte sîne triuwe guot

turned his faithfulness good

ûf einen valschen muot.

to a false spirit.

Daz eine was diu minne

The one was the love

diu im verriet die sinne,

which from-him betrayed the senses,

daz ander sîner swester schoene,

the other his sister's beauty,

325

daz drittē des tievels hœne,

the third the devil's scorn,

daz vierde was sîn kintheit,

the fourth was his childishness,

diu ûf in mit dem tievel streit,

which upon him with the devil strove,

unz er in dar ûf brâhte

until he him there to brought

330 daz er benamen gedâhte

that he assuredly thought

mit sîner swester slâfen.

with his sister to-sleep.

wâfen, herre, wâfen

to-arms, lord, to-arms

über des hellehundes list,

over the hellbound's cunning,

daz er uns sô geværic ist!

that he to-us so hostile is!

335 war umbē verhenget im des got

what for permits to-him it God

daz er sô manegen grôzen spot

that he so many-a great mockery

frumt über sîne hantgetât

works upon his handiwork

die er nâch im gebildet hât?

which he after himself formed has?

Dô er durch des tievels rât

When he through the devil's counsel

340 dise grôze missetât

this great misdeed

sich ze tuone bewac,

himself to do resolved,

beidiu naht unde tac

both night and day

wont er ir vriuntlicher mite

dwelt he her more-friendly with

danne ê wære sîn site.

than before were his custom.

nu was daz einvalte kint

now was the simple child

an sô getâner minne blint,

in so fashioned love blind,

und diu reine tumbe

and the pure innocent

enweste niht dar umbe

knew not there about

wes sî sich hûeten solde,

of-what she herself guard should,

und hancte im swes er wolde.

and yielded to-him whatever he wished.

nu begap sî der tiuvel nie

now let-go her the devil never

unz sîn wille an ir ergie.

until his will on her came-about.

Nu vriste erz unz an eine naht

Now put-off he-it until to one night

dô mit slâfe was bedaht

when with sleep was covered

diu juncfrouwe dâ sî lac.

the young-lady where she lay.

ir bruoder slâfes niht enpflac:

her brother of-sleep not took-care:

345

350

355

ûf stuont der unwise

up stood the unwise-one

und sleich vil harte lise

and crept very greatly softly

zuo ir bette da er sî vant

to her bed where he her found

360 unde huop daz ober gewant

and lifted the upper cover

ûf mit solhen sinnen

up with such wits

daz sî es nie wart innen

that she of-it never became aware

unz er dar under zuo ir kam

until he there under to her came

und sî an sînen arm genam.

and her in his arm took.

365 ouwî waz wolde er drunder?

alas what would he under-there?

jâ læge er baz besunder.

indeed would-lie he better apart.

ez wâren von in beiden

there were from them both

diu kleider gescheiden

the clothes parted

unz an daz declachen.

up to the sheet.

370 dô sî begunde wachen,

when she began to-wake,

dô het ers umbevangen.

then had he-her embraced.

ir munt unde ir wangen

her mouth and her cheeks

vant sî sô gelîmet ligen

found she so glued lie

als dâ der tiuvel wil gesigen.

as where the devil will prevail.

Nu begunde er sî triuten

Now began he her to-caress

375

mê danne vor den liuten

more than before the people

dâ vor wære sîn site.

there before were his custom.

hie verstuont sî sich mite

here understood she herself thereby

daz ez ein earnest solde sîn.

that it an earnest should be.

sî sprach 'wie nu, bruoder mân?

she said 'how now, brother mine?

380

wes wil du beginnen?

of-what wilt thou begin?

lâ dich von dînen sinnen

let thee from thy senses

den tiuvel niht bringen.

the devil not bring.

waz diutet ditz ringen?'

what means this struggling?'

si gedâhte 'swîge ich stille,

she thought '(if)-keep-silent I still,

385

so ergât des tiuvels wille

so comes-about the devil's will

und wurde mînes bruoder brût:

and become my brother's bride:

unde wurde ich aber lût,

and (if)-become I however loud,

sô habe wir iemer mêre

so have we ever more

390 verlor̄n unser êre'.

lost our honor'.

alsus versûmte sî der gedanc,

thus delayed her the thought,

unz daz er mit ir geranc,

until that he with her struggled,

wan er was starc und sî ze kranc,

for he was strong and she too weak,

daz erz âne der guoten danc

that he-it without the good-one's consent

395 brâhte ûf ein endespil.

brought to an end-game.

dâ was der triuwen alze vil.

there was of-the faithfulness all-too much.

dar nâch beleip ez âne braht.

there after remained it without clamor.

alsus wart sî der selben naht

thus became she the same night

swanger bî ir bruoder.

pregnant by her brother.

400 der tiuvelschûnde luoder

the devil's-urging bait

begunde sî mêre schûnden,

began them more to-urge,

daz in mit den sûnden

so-that to-them with the sins

lieben begunde.

to-please began.

sî hâlenz ûf die stunde

they hid-it until the hour

405 daz sich diu vrouwe des entstuont,

that herself the lady of-it perceived,

sô diu wîp vil schiere tuont,
as the women very soon do,

daz sî swanger wære.
that she pregnant were.

dô wart ir vröude swære:
then became her joy grief:

wan ezn stiuertē sî niht ze huote:
for it helped her not to guarding:

sî schein in unmuote.
she appeared in ill-spirits.

In geschach diu geswîche
To-them befell the deception

von grôzer heimliche:
from great intimacy:

heten sî der entwichen,
had they of-that avoided,

sô wærens umbeswichen.
so would-they-have-been unbetrayed.

nu sî gewarnet dar an
now be warned there on

ein iegeliche man
an every man

daz er swestern und nifteln sî
that he sisters and nieces be

niht ze heimliche bî:
not too intimately by:

ez reizt daz ungevüere
it provokes the unseemly

daz man wol verswüere.
which one well would-swear-off.

410

415

420

Alsô der junge

As the young-one

solhe wandelunge

such change

an sîner swester gesach,

in his sister saw,

er nam sî besunder unde sprach

he took her apart and spoke

425 'vil liebiu swester, sage mir,

'very dear sister, tell me,

du trûrest sô, waz wirret dir?

thou mournest so, what ails thee?

ich hân an dir genomen war,

I have in thee taken heed,

du schînest harte riuwevar:

thou appearest very rue-colored:

des was ich an dir ungewon'.

of-that was I in thee unaccustomed'.

430 nu begunde sî dâ von

now began she there from

siuften von herzen.

to-sigh from heart.

den angestlîchen smerzen

the anxious pain

erzeigte sî mit den ougen.

showed she with the eyes.

sî sprach 'des ist unlougen,

she said 'of-that is no-denying,

435 mirn gê trûrennes nôt.

to-me go of-mourning need.

bruoder, ich bin zwir tât,

brother, I am twice dead,

an der sêle und an dem lîbe.

in the soul and in the body.

ouwê mir armen wîbe,
alas me poor woman,

war zuo wart ich geborn?
what for was I born?

wande ich hân durch dich verlorn
for I have through thee lost

440

got und ouch die liute.
God and also the people.

daz mein daz wir unz hiute
the sin that we until today

der werlde haben vor verstoln,
from-the world have before concealed,

dazn wil niht mê sîn verholn.
that will not more be bidden.

ich bewar vil wol daz ich ez sage:
I guard very well lest I it tell:

445

aber daz kint daz ich hie trage
but the child which I here carry

daz tuot ez wol den liuten kunt'.
that makes it well to-the people known'.

nu half der bruoder dâ zestunt
now helped the brother there at-once

trûren sîner swester:
mourn his sister:

sîn jâmer wart noch vester.
his misery became yet firmer.

450

An disem ungewinne
In this loss

erzeigte ouch vrou Minne
showed also lady Love

ir swære gewonheit:
her heavy custom:

sî machet ie nâch liebe leit.
she makes ever after joy sorrow.

- 455 alsam ist in erwallen
likewise is to-them welled-up
 daz honec mit der gallen.
the honey with the gall.
 er begunde sêre weinen,
he began sorely to-weep,
 daz houbet underleinen
the head to-prop
 sô riuweclîche mit der hant,
so ruefully with the hand,
- 460 als demz ze sorgen ist gewant.
as (one)-to-whom-it to cares is disposed.
 ez stuont umb al sîn êre:
it stood about all his honor:
 iedoch sô klagte er mêre
nevertheless so lamented he more
 sîner swester arbeit
his sister's hardship
 danne sîn selbes leit.
than his own sorrow.
- 465 Diu swester sach ir bruoder an,
The sister looked her brother at,
 si sprach 'gehabe dich als ein man,
she said 'bear thyself as a man,
 lâ dîn wîplich weinen stân
let thy womanly weeping stand
 (ezn mac uns leider niht vervân)
(it can us alas not avail)
 und vint uns etlichen rât,
and find us some counsel,
- 470 ob wir durch unser missetât
if we through our misdeed
 âne gotes hulde müezen sîn,
without God's favor must be,

daz doch unser kindelîn

lest yet our little-child

mit uns iht verlorn sî,

with us at-all lost be,

daz der valle iht werden drî.

lest of-the falls at-all become three.

ouch ist uns ofte vor geseit

also is to-us often before said

daz ein kint niene treit

that a child not-at-all bears

sînes vater schulde.

its father's guilt.

jane sol ez gotes hulde

indeed shall it God's favor

niht dâ mite hân verlorn,

not there with have lost,

ob wir zer helle sîn geborn;

if we to-the hell are born;

wand ez an unser missetât

for it in our misdeed

deheiner slahte schulde hât'.

of-no kind guilt has'.

Nu begundē sîn herze wanken

Now began his heart to-waver

in manegen gedanken.

in many thoughts.

eine wîle er swîgende saz.

a while he silent sat.

er sprach 'swester, gehabe dich baz.

he said 'sister, bear thyself better.

475

480

485

ich hân uns vunden einen rât
I have for-us found a counsel

der uns ze staten gestât
which us to stead stands

ze verhelne unser schande.
to conceal our disgrace.

490 ich hân in mînem lande
I have in my land

einen harte wîsen man
a very wise man

der uns wol gerâten kan,
who us well counsel can,

den mir mîn vater ouch beschiet
whom to-me my father also appointed

und mir an sîne lêre riet,
and to-me to his teaching counseled,

495 dô er an sînem tôde lac,
when he at his death lay,

wand er ouch sînes râtes phlac.
for he also his counsel used.

den neme wir an unsern rât:
him take we into our counsel:

ich weiz wol daz er triuwe hât:
I know well that he faithfulness has:

und volgē wir sîner lêre.
and follow we his teaching.

500 sô gestêt unser êre.
so stands-firm our honor.'

The Wise Man's Counsel

IV

The old counselor is summoned at once and consulted in private. He advises the brother to go on pilgrimage to the Holy Sepulcher and to have the lords swear allegiance to his sister, who will bear the child in secret in the counselor's house. She should remain in the land and atone with her wealth, since a good will joined to goods can do more than a good will alone. The plan is carried out, and brother and sister part in great sorrow, never to see each other again.

Diu vrouwe wart des râtes vrô.

The lady became of-the counsel glad.

ir vröude schuof sich alsô,

her joy shaped itself so,

als ez ir dô was gewant:

as it for-her then was disposed:

irn was kein ganziu vröude erkant:

to-her was no whole joy known:

daz ir trûren wære

that for-her mourning were

dô sî was âne swære,

when she was without grief,

daz was ir bestiu vröude hie,

that was her best joy here,

daz sî niuwan ir weinen lie.

that she only her weeping left-off.

der rât behagte ir harte wol:

the counsel pleased her very well:

sî sprach 'der uns dâ râten sol,

she said 'he-who us there counsel shall,

bruoder, den besende enzît,

brother, him summon in-time,

wan mân tac unverre lît.'

for my day not-far lies.'

505

510

Nu wart er schiere besant:

Now was he quickly summoned:

der bote brâhte in zehant.

the messenger brought him at-once.

515 nu wart er schône enphangen:

now was he fairly received:

besunder wart gegangen

apart was gone

in eine kemenâten,

into a chamber,

dâ sî in râtes bâten.

where they him for-counsel asked.

alsus sprach der jungelinc:

thus spoke the youth:

520 'ich hân dich umbe swachiu dinc

I have thee for paltry things

niht dâ her besant.

not there hither summoned.

ichn weiz nu niemen der mîn lant

I know now no-one who my land

ze disen zîten bûwe,

at these times might-till,

dem ich sô wol getrûwe.

whom I so well trust.

525 sît dich nu got sô gêret hât

since thee now God so honored has

(er gap dir triuwe und hôhen rât),

(he gave thee faithfulness and high counsel),

des lâ uns geniezen.

of-that let us profit.

wir wellen dir entsliezen

we will to-thee unlock

ein heimliche sache,

a secret matter,

diu uns nâch ungemache

which us to discomfort

530

umb alle unser êre stât,

about all our honor stands,

ezne sî daz uns dîn rât

unless-it be that us thy counsel

durch got dâ von gescheide.'

for God there from part.'

sus buten sî sich beide

thus offered they themselves both

weinende ûf sînen fuoz.

weeping upon his foot.

535

er sprach 'herre, dirre gruoz

he said 'lord, this greeting

der diuhte mich ze grôz,

it would-seem to-me too great,

wære ich noch iuwer genôz.

were I even your equal.

stêt ûf, herre, durch got,

stand up, lord, for God,

lât hœren iuwer gebot,

let hear your command,

540

daz ich niemer zebrechen wil,

which I never break will,

unde gebet dirre rede ein zil.

and give this speech an end.

saget mir waz iu werre;

tell me what you troubles;

ir sît mîn geborner herre:

you are my born lord:

ich râte iu sô ich beste kan;

I counsel you as I best can;

545

dân̄e gezwîvelt niemer an.'

there doubt never on.'

Nu tâtens im ir sache kunt.

Now made-they to-him their matter known.

er half in beiden dâ ze stunt

he helped them both there at once

weinen vor leide

weep for sorrow

550 (er meinde wol sî beide)

(he loved well them both)

und trôste sî vil harte wol,

and comforted them very greatly well,

als man den friunt nâch leide sol

as one the friend after sorrow should

daz nieman doch erwenden kan.

whiche no-one yet prevent can.

sus sprach daz kint zem wîsen man:

thus spoke the child to-the wise man:

555 'herre, nu vint uns einen rât,

'lord, now find us a counsel,

der uns nu aller nâhest gât,

whiche us now of-all nearest goes,

sô uns nu kumet diu zît

when to-us now comes the time

daz mîn swester gelît,

that my sister lies-in,

wâ sî des kindes genese

where she of-the child be-delivered

560 daz ir geburt verswigen wese.

that her birth kept-secret be.

nu gedenke ich, ob ich wone

now think I, if I dwell

die wîle mîner swester vone

the while my sister from

ûzerhalb dem lande,

outside the land,

daz unser zweier schande

that our two's disgrace

sî verswigen deste baz.'

be kept-secret the better'

565

Der wîse sprach 'sô râte ich daz:

The wise-one spoke 'so counsel I that:

die iuwers landes walten,

those-who your land govern,

die jungen zuo den alten

the young with the old

sult ir ze hove gebieten,

shall you to court summon,

und die iuwerm vater rieten.

and those-who your father counseled.

570

ir sult iuch wider sî enbarn

you shall yourself to them reveal

daz ir zehant wellet varn

that you at-once will fare

durch got zem heiligen grabe.

for God to-the holy sepulcher.

mit bete gewinnet uns abe

with prayer win from-us off

daz wir der vrouwen hulde swern

that we to-the lady allegiance swear

575

(des beginnet sich dâ niemen wern),

(of-that begins himself there no-one to-refuse),

daz sî des landes müeze pflegen

that she of-the land may take-care

unz ir belîbet under wegen.

while you remain on-the way.

dâ büezet iuwer sünde

there atone your sin

als iuch des got geschünde.

as you of-it God inspire.

580

der lîp hât wider in getân:

the body has against him done:

den lât im ouch ze buoze stân.

that let to-him also in penance stand.

und begrîft iuch dâ der tôt,

and (if)-seizes you there the death,

sô ist des eides harte nô,

so is of-the oath very need,

585 daz sî unser vrouwe müeze sîn.

that she our lady may be.

bevelhet se ûf die triuwe mîn

entrust her to the faithfulness mine

vor den herren allen

before the lords all

(daz muoz in wol gevallen,

(that must them well please,

wand ich der altist under in

for I the oldest among them

590 und ouch der rîchiste bin):

and also the richest am):

sô nim ich sî hin heim zuo mir:

so take I her away home to me:

solhen gemach schaffe ich ir

such comfort make I for-her

daz sî daz kint alsô gebirt

that she the child so bears

daz des niemen innen wirt.

that of-it no-one aware becomes.

595 Got gesende iuch wider, herre;

God send you back, lord;

des getrûwe ich im vil verre.

of-that trust I him very far.

belîbêt ir danne under wegen,

(if)-remain you then on-the way,

so gevallet iu der gotes segen:

so falls to-you the God's blessing:

zewâre sône ist niht mîn rât

truly so is not my counsel

daz sî durch dise missetât

that she for this misdeed

der werlde iht enphliche,

from-the world at-all flee,

des landes sich entziehe.

from-the land herself withdraw.

belibet sî bî dem lande,

(if)-remains she by the land,

ir sünde unde ir schande

her sin and her disgrace

mac sî sô baz gebüezen.

can she so better atone.

sî mac den armen grüezen

she can the poor greet

mit guote und mit muote,

with goods and with spirit,

bestet sî bî dem guote.

(if)-remains she by the goods.

gebristet ir des guotes,

(if)-lacks she of-the goods,

sone hât sî niuwans muotes:

so has she only-of spirit:

nu waz mac danne ir muot

now what can then her spirit

gefrumen iemen âne guot?

profit anyone without goods?

waz touc der muot âne guot

what avails the spirit without goods

oder guot âne muot?

or goods without spirit?

600

605

610

- 615 ein teil frumt muot âne guot,
a part profits spirit without goods,
 noch bezzer ist guot unde muot.
yet better is goods and spirit.
 von diu sô dunket mich daz guot,
from that so seems to-me that good,
 si behabe guot unde muot:
she keep goods and spirit:
 sô mac sî mit dem guote
so can she with the goods
- 620 volziehen dem muote:
carry-out the spirit:
 sô rihte gote mit muote
so make-amends to-God with spirit
 mit lîbe und mit guote.
with body and with goods.
 ouch râte ich dir den selben muot'.
also counsel I to-thee the same spirit'.
 der rât dûhte sî beide guot,
the counsel seemed to-them both good,
- 625 und volgten alsô drâte
and followed-they so quickly
 sînem guoten râte.
his good counsel.
- Dô die herren über daz lant
When the lords over the land
- ze hove wurden besant,
to court were summoned,
 und daz sî für kâmen
and that they before came
- 630 und ir herren vernâmen,
and their lord heard,
 sîner bete wart gevolget sâ.
his request was followed straightway.

dem alten bevalch er dâ

to-the old-one entrusted he there

sîne swester bî der hant.

his sister by the hand.

sus gedâht er rûmen sîn lant.

thus thought he to-leave his land.

den schaz den ir vater lie,

the treasure which their father left,

der wart mit ir geteilet hie.

it was with her divided here.

Sus schieden sî sich beide

Thus parted they themselves both

mit grôzem herzeleide.

with great heart-sorrow.

enheten sî niht geführtet got,

had they not feared God,

sî heten iemer der werlde spot

they would-have ever the world's mockery

gedultet für daz scheiden.

endured instead-of the parting.

man möhte von in beiden

one might from them both

dâ grôzen jâmer hân gesehen.

there great misery have seen.

niemer müeze mir geschehen

never may to-me happen

alsô grôzer ungemach,

so great discomfort,

als den gelieben geschach,

as to-the loved-ones befell,

dô sî sich muosen scheiden.

when they themselves had-to part.

635

640

645

zewâre ez was in beiden

truly it was to-them both

diu vröude alsô tiure

the joy so scarce

650 sam daz îs in dem viure.

as the ice in the fire.

ein getriuwiu wandelunge ergie,

a faithful exchange came-about,

dô sî sich muosen scheiden hie:

when they themselves had-to part here:

sîn herze volgte ir von dan,

his heart followed her from thence,

daz ir bestuont bî dem man.

that hers remained by the man.

655 durch nôt tet in daz scheiden wê;

of necessity did to-them the parting woe;

sin gesâhen ein ander niemer mê.

they saw one another never more.

The Tablet and the Cask

V

The counselor's pious wife helps hide the birth of a son. They set the child adrift in a sturdy cask, wrapped in silk, with twenty marks of gold and an ivory tablet. On the tablet the mother writes that he is of high birth and the son of a brother and sister, and asks that he be baptized, raised, and shown the tablet when grown, so that he may atone for his parents. By night the cask is set on the sea in a boat.

Nu fuorte dirre wîse man

Now led this wise man

sîne juncvrouwen dan

his young-lady away

in sîn hûs, dê ir geschach

into his house, where to-her befell

michel guot und gemach.

much good and comfort.

660

nu was diu hûsfrouwe ein wîp

now was the housewife a woman

diu beidiu sinne unde lîp

who both senses and body

in gotes dienest hâte ergeben:

into God's service had given:

kein wîp endorfte bezzer leben.

no woman needed better to-live.

diu half in âne untriuwe steln,

she helped them without faithlessness to-steal,

665

ir vrouwen kumber heln,

their lady's affliction to-conceal,

sô wîbes güete gezam,

as woman's goodness befitted,

daz ir geburt sô ende nam
so-that her birth so end took

daz der niemen wart gewar.
that of-it no-one became aware.

670 ez was ein sun daz sî gebar,
it was a son that she bore,

der guote sündære
the good sinner

von dem disiu mære
of whom these tales

von allerêrste erhaben sint.
from very-first raised are.

ez was ein wünneclîchez kint.
it was a delightful child.

675 ze des Kindes gebürte
at the child's birth

was niemen zantwürte
was no-one present

niewan dise vrouwen zwô.
except these ladies two.

der wirt wart dar geladet dô:
the host was there invited then:

unde als er daz kint ersach,
and when he the child saw,

680 mit den vrouwen er des jach
with the ladies he of-that declared

daz nie zer werlde kæme
that never into-the world should-come

ein kint alsô genæme.
a child so pleasing.

Nu wurdens alsô drâte

Now became-they so quickly

under in ze râte

among themselves at counsel

wie ez verholn möhte sîn.

how it hidden could be.

685

sî sprâchen, diz schoene kindelîn

they said, this fair little-child

daz wære schedelich verlorn:

that would-be harmfully lost:

nu wære ez aber geborn

now was it however born

mit alsô grôzen sünden,

with so great sins,

ezn wolde in got künden,

unless-it would to-them God make-known,

690

daz sî niene westen

that they not-at-all knew

von allen ræten den besten.

of all counsels the best.

an got sazten sî den rât,

on God set they the counsel,

daz er sî aller missetât

that he them from-all misdeed

bewarte an disen dingen.

might-guard in these things.

695

dô muose in wol gelingen;

then had-to to-them well succeed;

wan im niemer missegât

for to-him never goes-amiss

der sich ze rehte an in verlât.

who himself to right on him relies.

- Nu kom in vaste in den muot,
Now came to-them firmly into the spirit,
- 700 in enwære niht sô guot
to-them were not so good
- sô daz si ez versanden ûf den sê.
as that they it should-send upon the sea.
- daz wart niht gevristet mê:
that was not delayed more:
- der wirt huop sich ver stolne
the host took himself stealthily
- und gewan vil verholne
and got very secretly
- 705 ein vâzzelîn vil veste
a little-cask very strong
- und hie zuo daz beste
and here to the best
- daz deheinez möhte sîn.
that any could be.
- dâ wart daz schoene kindelîn
there was the fair little-child
- mit manegen trahen in geleit,
with many tears in laid,
- 710 under unde über gespreit
under and over spread
- als rîchiu sîdîniu wât
such rich silken cloth
- daz niemen bezzere hât.
that no-one better has.
- ouch wurden zuo im dar in
also were to him there in
- geleit, als ich bewîset bin,
laid, as I informed am,
- 715 zweinzic markē von golde,
twenty marks of gold,

dâ mite man ez solde

there with one it should

ziehen obez ze lande

rear if-it to land

got iemer gesande.

God ever should-send.

Ein tavel wart getragen dar

A tablet was carried there

der vrouwen diu daz kint gebar,

of-the lady who the child bore,

diu vil guot helfenbein was,

which very good ivory was,

gezieret wol, als ich ez las,

adorned well, as I it read,

von golde und von gesteine,

with gold and with gems,

daz ich nie deheine

that I never any

alsô guote gewan.

so good got.

dâ schreip diu muoter an

there wrote the mother on

sô sî meiste mahte

as she most could

von des Kindes ahte:

of the child's condition:

wan si hâte den gedingen

for she had the hope

daz ez got solde bringen

that it God should bring

den liuten ze handen

to-the people to hands

die got an im erkanden.

who God in him acknowledged.

720

725

730

Dar an stuont geschriben sô:

There on stood written so:

ez wære von gebürte hô;

it were of birth high;

735 und diu ez gebære,

and she-who it bore,

daz diu sîn base wære;

that she its aunt were;

sîn vater wære sîn œhein.

its father were its uncle.

ez wære, ze helne daz mein,

it were, to hide the sin,

versant ûf den sê.

sent upon the sea.

740 dannoch schreip sî im mê

still wrote she to-it more

daz man ez toufen solde

that one it baptize should

und ziehen mit dem golde;

and rear with the gold;

und ob sîn vindære

and if its finder

alsô kristen wære,

so Christian were,

745 daz er im den schaz mêrte

that he for-it the treasure should-increase

und ez ouch diu buoch lêrte,

and it also the books should-teach,

sîne tavel im behielte

its tablet for-it should-keep

und im der schrift wielte,

and for-it the writing should-guard,

würde ez immer ze man,

should-become it ever to man,

daz er læse daran

that he should-read thereon

750

alle dise geschiht.

all this story.

sô überhüebe er sich niht:

so should-exalt he himself not:

unde würde er alsô guot

and should-become he so good

daz er ze gote sînen muot

that he to God his spirit

wenden begunde,

to-turn should-begin,

755

sô buozte er zaller stunde

so should-atone he at-all hours

durch sîner triuwen rât

through his faithfulness's counsel

sînes vaters missetât,

his father's misdeed,

und daz er ouch der gedæhte

and that he also of-her should-think

diu in zer werlde bræhte.

who him into-the world brought.

760

des wære in beiden nôt

of-that were to-them both need

vür den êwigen tôt.

against the eternal death.

im enwart dâ niht benant

to-him was there not named

weder liute noch lant,

either people or land,

geburt noch sîn heimuoht;

birth or his homeland;

765

daz was ouch in ze helne guot.

that was also for-them to hide good.

Dô der brief was gereit,

When the letter was ready,

dô wart diu tavele geleit

then was the tablet laid

zuo im in daz kleine vaz.

to him into the little cask.

770 dô besluzzen sî daz

then locked they it

mit solher gewarheit

with such safety

daz deheiner slahte leit

that of-no kind harm

geschæhe dem kinde

should-befall the child

von regen noch von winde

from rain nor from wind

775 noch von der ünden vreise

nor from the waves' peril

ûf der wazzerreise

upon the water-journey

ze zwein tagen oder ze drin.

for two days or for three.

alsus truogen sî ez hin

thus carried they it away

bî der naht zuo dem sê:

by the night to the sea:

780 vor dem tage enmohtens ê:

before the day could-they-not sooner:

dâ fundens eine barke

there found-they a boat

ledege unde starke:

empty and strong:

dâ leiten sî mit jâmer an
there laid they with misery in

disen kleinen schefman.
this little shipman.

dô sande im der süeze Krist,
then sent to-him the sweet Christ,

der bezzer denne genædic ist,
who better than gracious is,

den vil rehten wunschwind:
the very right wishing-wind:

sî stiezen an, hin vlôz daz kint.
they pushed off, away floated the child.

785

The Lady's Three Sorrows

VI

Hartmann says he cannot describe a grief he has never felt. The lady carries three sorrows: the sin, the childbirth, and fear for her child. Then word comes that her brother has died of longing for her. She inherits the land, refuses every suitor, and gives herself to God in prayer, fasting, and penance. A rejected lord makes war on her and takes all her land except her chief city.

Ir wizzet wol daz ein man
You know well that a man

der ir iewederz nie gewan,
who of-them either never had,

rehte liep noch herzeleit,
real joy nor heart-sorrow,

dem ist der munt niht sô gereit
to-him is the mouth not so ready

rehte ze sprechennê dâ von,
rightly to speak there of,

sô dem der ir ist gewon.
as to-him who to-them is accustomed.

790

795 nu bin ich gescheiden
now am I parted
 dâ zwischen von in beiden,
there between from them both,
 wan mir iedwederz nie geschach,
for to-me either never befell,
 ichn gewan nie liep noch ungemach,
I had never joy nor discomfort,
 ichn lebe übele noch wol.
I-not live ill nor well.

800 dâ von enmac ich als ich sol
there from can-not I as I should
 der vrouwen leit entecken
the lady's sorrow uncover
 noch mit worten errecken;
nor with words set-forth;
 wan ez wære von ir schaden
for it would-be with her harm
 tûsent herze überladen.
a-thousand hearts overladen.

805 Der leide wâren driu
Of-the sorrows were three
 diu diu vrouwe einiu
which the lady alone
 in ir herzen truoc,
in her heart bore,
 der iegliches wære genuoc
of-which each would-be enough
 vil maneges wîbes herzen.
for-very many-a woman's heart.

sî truoc den einen smerzen

she bore the one pain

von dem meinē daz sî begie

from the sin which she committed

mit ir bruoder den sî lie.

with her brother whom she left.

der siechtuom der ander was,

the sickness the second was,

daz sî des kindes genas.

that she of-the child was-delivered.

daz dritte was diu vorhte

the third was the fear

die ir der jâmer worhte

which in-her the misery wrought

nâch ir lieben kinde,

after her dear child,

daz sî dem wilden winde

that she to-the wild wind

hete bevolhen ûf den sê,

had entrusted upon the sea,

und enweste niht, wiez im ergê,

and knew not, how-it for-him goes,

weder ez genæse oðer læge tât.

whether it should-survive or should-lie dead.

sî was geborn ze grôzer nôt.

she was born to great distress.

noch enwas ez niht gescheiden

still was it not ended

mit disen drin leiden.

with these three sorrows.

810

815

820

- 825 unmanic tac ende nam
not-many-a day end took
- unze ir böese mære kam
until to-her evil tidings came
- und der grœzest ungemach
and the greatest discomfort
- der ir zir lebene ie geschach,
which to-her in-her life ever befell,
- daz ir bruoder wære tât.
that her brother were dead.
- 830 der tât kom im von seneder nôt.
the death came to-him from longing distress.
- Dô sî von ir bruoder schiet
When she from her brother parted
- als in der wîse beiden riet,
as to-them the wise-one both counseled,
- nu begunde er siechen zehant
now began he to-sicken at-once
- (des twanc in der minne bant),
(to-that compelled him the love's bond),
- 835 und muose belîben sîner vart
and had-to give-up his journey
- der er durch got enein wart.
on-which he for God resolved was.
- sîn jâmer wart sô vester
his misery became so firm
- nâch sîner lieben swester
after his dear sister
- daz er ze keiner stunde
that he at no hour
- 840 sich getrœsten kunde.
himself comfort could.
- alsus dorret im der lîp.
thus withered for-him the body.

swie sî doch jehen daz diu wîp
however they yet say that the women

sêrer minnen dan die man,
more-sorely love than the men,

desn ist niht. daz schein dar an:
of-that is not. that appeared there by:

wande sîn herzeleit,
for his heart-sorrow,

845

daz im für was gespreit,
which to-him before was spread,

daz was dâ wider kleine,
that was there against small,

niewan diu minne eine,
except the love alone,

diu im ein zil des tôdes was:
which to-him a goal of-the death was:

der het sî vieriu und genas.
of-that had she four and survived.

850

sus ergreif in diu senede nôt
thus seized him the longing distress

und lac vor herzeriuwe tô.
and lay from heart-rue dead.

Diz mære wart ir kunt getân,
This tidings was to-her known made,

dô sî ze kirchen solde gân,
when she to church should go,

rehte dâ vor drîer tage.
just there before three days.

855

nu vuor sî hin mit grôzer klage
now went she thither with great lament

und begruob ir bruoder und ir man.
and buried her brother and her man.

dô sî daz lant zuo ir gewan

when she the land to herself got

unde daz ze mære erschall

and that as tidings resounded

860 in den landen über al,

in the lands over all,

vil manic rîcher herre

very many-a rich lord

nâhen unde verre

near and far

die gerten ir ze wîbe.

they desired her to woman.

an gebürte und an libe,

in birth and in body,

865 an rîcheit und an jugende,

in wealth and in youth,

an schœne und an tugende,

in beauty and in virtue,

an zuht unde an güete

in breeding and in goodness

und an allem ir gemüete

and in all her spirit

sô was sî guotes mannes wert:

so was she of-good man worthy:

870 doch wurdens alle entwert.

yet were-they all refused.

Sî hete zuo ir minne erwelt

She had to her love chosen

weizgot einen starken helt,

God-knows a strong hero,

den aller tiuristen man

the of-all dearest man

der ie mannes namen gewan.

who ever man's name got.

vor dem zierte sî ir lîp

before him adorned she her body

als ein minnendez wîp

as a loving woman

ûf einen biderben man sol,

for a worthy man should,

dem sî gerne behaget wol.

whom she gladly pleases well.

swie vaste ez sî wider dem site

however firmly it be against the custom

daz dehein wîp mannes bite,

that any woman a-man should-woo,

sô lac sî im doch allez an,

so pressed she to-him yet ever at,

sô sî des state gewan,

when she of-that opportunity got,

mit dem herzen zaller stunde

with the heart at-all hours

unde ouch mit dem munde:

and also with the mouth:

ich meine den gnædigen got.

I mean the gracious God.

sît daz ir des tiuvels spot

since that for-her the devil's mockery

sîne hulde het entworht,

his favor had undone,

875

880

885

daz hâte sî nu sô sêre ervorht

that had she now so sorely feared

daz sî vröude und gemach

that she joy and comfort

890 durch sîne hulde versprach

for his favor renounced

sô daz sî naht unde tac

so that she night and day

solher unmuoze phlac

such toil practiced

diu dem lîbe unsamfte tete.

which to-the body ungently did.

beide mit wachen und mit gebete,

both with waking and with prayer,

895 mit almuosen und mit vasten

with almsgiving and with fasting

enlie sî den lîp nie gerasten.

let she the body never rest.

diu wâre riuwe was dâ bî,

the true rue was there by,

diu aller sünden machet vrî.

which of-all sins makes free.

Nu was ir ein herre

Now was to-her a lord

900 gesezzen unverre,

settled not-far,

des namen ir vil wol gelîch,

whose name to-her very well alike,

beidiu edel unde rîch:

both noble and rich:

der leite sînen vlîz dar an

he laid his diligence there on

daz sî in næme ze man.

that she him should-take to man.

und dô er sîn reht getete

and when he his due did

mit boteschaft und mit bete

with embassy and with entreaty

als erz versuochen solde

as he-it try should

und sî sîn niene wolde,

and she of-him not-at-all would,

nu wânde er sî gewinnen sô:

now thought he her to-win so:

mit urliege und mit drô

with war and with threat

sô bestuont er sî zehant

so attacked he her at-once

und verwuoste ir daz lant.

and laid-waste for-her the land.

er gewan ir abe die besten

he won from-her off the best

stete und ir vesten,

towns and her fortresses,

unz er sî gar vertreip,

until he her wholly drove-out,

daz ir niht beleip

so-that to-her nothing remained

wan eine ir houbetstat.

but alone her chief-city.

diu was ouch alsô besat

it was also so besieged

mit tægêlicher huote,

with daily guarding,

905

910

915

- 920 **ezn welle got der guote**
unless-it will God the good
mit sînen gnâden understân,
with his grace prevent,
sî muoz ouch die verlorn hân.
she must also it lost have.

The Fishermen and the Abbot

VII

After two nights and a day the boat reaches a shore near a monastery. Two fishermen driven back by a storm find the cask and hide it under their clothes, but the abbot questions them and hears the child cry. He reads the tablet, keeps its secret, and has the fishermen swear silence. The poorer fisherman is to raise the boy as his niece's child. The abbot baptizes him with his own name, Gregorius, and keeps the gold for him.

- Nu lâzen dise rede hie,**
Now let-us-leave this tale here,
und sagen wie ez ergie
and tell how it went
925 **dirre vrouwen kinde,**
for-this lady's child,
daz die wilden winde
that the wild winds
wurfen swar in got gebôt,
threw wherever them God commanded,
in daz leben oder in den tôt.
into the life or into the death.
unser herre got der guote
our lord God the good
930 **underwant sich sîn ze huote,**
took-charge himself of-it for guarding,

von des genâden Jônas

through whose grace Jonah

ouch in dem mere genas,

also in the sea survived,

der drîe tage unde drîe naht

who three days and three nights

in dem wâge was bedaht

in the wave was covered

in eines visches wamme.

in a fish's belly.

er was des kindes amme

he was the child's nurse

unz daz erz gesande

until that he-it sent

wol gesunt ze lande.

well sound to land.

In zwein nehten und in einem tage

In two nights and in one day

kom ez von der ünden slage

came it from the waves' beating

zuo einem lande,

to a land,

als ez got dar gesande.

as it God there sent.

ein klôster an dem stade lac,

a cloister on the shore lay,

des ein geistlich abbet phlac.

of-which a spiritual abbot took-care.

der gebôt zwein vischâren

he commanded two fishermen

daz sî benamen wâren

that they assuredly were

vor tage vischen ûf den sê.

before day fishing upon the sea.

935

940

945

dô tet in daz weter wê:

then did to-them the weather woe:

der wint wart alsô grôz

the wind became so great

950 daz sî kleine noch grôz

that they small nor great

mohten gevâhen.

could catch.

si begunden wider gâhen.

they began back to-basten.

in der widerreise

on the return-journey

fundens ûf der freise

found-they upon the peril

955 sweben des Kindes barke.

floating the child's boat.

nu wundert sî vil starke

now wondered them very strongly

wie sî dar komen wære

how it there come were

alsô liute lære.

so of-people empty.

sî zugen darzuo sô nâhen

they drew there-to so near

960 daz sî darinne sâhen

that they therein saw

ligen daz wênige vaz.

lie the tiny cask.

dar ûz huoben sî daz

there out lifted they it

und leitenz in daz schef zuo in:

and laid-it into the ship to them:

diu barke ran lære hin.

the boat ran empty away.

Daz wintgestœze wart sô grôz

The wind-buffeting became so great

965

daz sî ûf dem sê verdrôz.

that them upon the sea irked.

diu state enmohte in niht geschehen

the opportunity could to-them not befall

daz sî hæten besehen

that they had looked-over

waz in dem vasse wære.

what in the cask were.

daz was in aber unmære:

that was to-them however indifferent:

970

wan sî hâten des gedâht,

for they had of-that thought,

sô sîz ze hûse hæten brâht,

when they-it to house had brought,

sô besæhen sî mit gemache

so would-look-over they with leisure

ir fundene sache.

their found thing.

sî wurfen drüber ir gewant

they threw over-it their clothing

975

und zugen vaste an daz lant.

and pulled hard to the land.

Hie mite kurn sî den tac.

Here with saw they the day.

der abbet der der zelle phlac,

the abbot who of-the cell took-care,

gie kurzwîlen zuo dem sê,

went for-pastime to the sea,

er alters eine und nieman mê,

he quite alone and no-one more,

980

und wartē der vischære,

and waited-for the fishermen,

welch ir gelücke wære.

what their luck were.

dô fuoren sî iemitten zuo.

then rowed they meanwhile toward.

des dûhte den abbet alze vruo:

that seemed to-the abbot all-too early:

985 er sprach 'wiest ez ergangen?

he said 'how-is it gone?

habt ir iht gevangen?'

have you at-all caught?'

sî sprâchen 'lieber herre,

they said 'dear lord,

wir wâren alze verre

we were all-too far

gevaren ûf den sê:

gone upon the sea:

990 uns wart von weter nie sô wê:

to-us became from weather never so woe:

uns was der tôt vil nâch beschert,

to-us was the death very near allotted,

wir haben den lîp vil kûme ernert.'

we have the life very barely saved.'

er sprach 'nu lât die vische wesen:

he said 'now let the fish be:

got lobe ich daz ir sît genesen

God praise I that you are saved

995 und alsô komen an daz stat.'

and so come to the shore.'

der abbet im dô sagen bat,

the abbot him then tell bade,

er sprach, waz ez möhte sîn:

he said, what it might be:

dâ meinde er daz vâzzelîn

there meant he the little-cask

daz mit dem gewande was gespreit.

which with the clothing was spread.

diu vrâge was in beiden leit,

the question was to-them both grievous,

1000

und sprâchen wes ein herre

and said-they why a lord

frâgte alsô verre

should-ask so far

umb armer liute sache

about poor people's matter

in beiden ze ungemache.

to-them both to discomfort.

dô reichte er dar mit dem stabe,

then reached he there with the staff,

1005

daz gewant warf er abe

the clothing threw he off

und sach daz wênige vaz.

and saw the tiny cask.

er sprach 'wâ nâmet ir daz?'

he said 'where took you that?'

nu gedâhten sî maneger lügen,

now thought they many-a lie,

wie sî den abbet betrügen,

how they the abbot might-deceive,

1010

und wolden imz entsaget hân,

and would from-him-it denied have,

und hâten daz ouch wol getân,

and would-have that also well done,

wan daz ers wart innen

but that he-of-it became aware

von unsers herren minnen.

from our lord's love.

- 1015 Dô er die vrâge wolde lân
When he the question would leave
 und wider in sîn klôster gân,
and back into his cloister go,
 do erweindē daz kint vil lûte
then wept the child very loud
 und kuntē dem gotes trûte
and made-known to-the God's beloved
 daz ez dâ inne wære.
that it there inside were.
- 1020 dô sprach der gewære
then spoke the true-one
 'hie ist ein kint inne.
'here is a child inside.
 sagt mir in der Minne,
tell me in the Love,
 wâ habet irz genomen?
where have you-it taken?
 wie ist ez iu zuo komen?
how is it to-you to come?
- 1025 daz wil ich wizzen, crêde mich.'
that will I know, believe me.'
 dô bedâhten sî sich
then bethought they themselves
 und sagten im als ich iu ê,
and told to-him as I to-you before,
 wie sî ez vunden ûf dem sê.
how they it found upon the sea.
 nu hiez erz heven ûf den sant
now bade he-it lift onto the sand
- 1030 und lœsen abe diu bant.
and loosen off the bands.

dô sah er ligen dar inne

then saw he lie there inside

seltsæne gewinne,

strange gain,

ein kint, daz im sîn herze jach

a child, that to-him his heart declared

daz er sô schœnez nie gesach.

that he so fair-one never saw.

Der ellende weise,

The exiled orphan,

wand er deheine vreise

for he no peril

geführten niene kunde,

fear at-all could,

mit einem süezen munde

with a sweet mouth

sô lachte er den abbet an.

so laughed he the abbot at.

und alsô der gelêrte man

and as the learned man

an sîner tavele gelas

on his tablet read

wie daz kint geborn was,

how the child born was,

[daz manz noch toufen solde

[that one-it yet baptize should

und ziehen mit dem golde,]

and rear with the gold,]

daz kunde er wol verwîgen.

that could he well keep-silent.

ze gote begunde er nîgen,

to God began he to-bow,

1035

1040

1045

ze himel huop er tougen

to heaven lifted he secretly

die hende und diu ougen,

the hands and the eyes,

und lobete got des fundes

and praised God for-the finding

1050 und des kindes gesundes.

and for-the child's soundness.

Daz kindelîn sî vunden

The little-child they found

mit phelle bewunden,

with silk wound,

geworht ze Alexandrîe.

wrought in Alexandria.

nu westen ez die drîe:

now knew it the three:

1055 ezn wart ouch fürbaz niht gespreit.

it was also further not spread.

ouch saget man des die wârheit

also tells one of-it the truth

von den vischæren

of the fisbermen

daz sî gebrueder wæren.

that they brothers were.

die muosten im beide

they had-to to-him both

1060 mit triuwen und mit eide

with faithfulness and with oath

vil wol bestæten daz,

very well confirm that,

si ensagtenz nimmer fürbaz.

they would-tell-it never further.

Die bruoder wâren ungelîch,
The brothers were unlike,

der einē was arm, der ander rîch.
the one was poor, the other rich.

der arme bî dem klôster saz,
the poor-one by the cloister dwelt,

1065

der rîche wol hin dan baz
the rich-one well away thence further

wol über einer mîle zil.
well over a mile's distance.

der arme hete kinde vil:
the poor-one had children many:

der rîche nie dēhein kint gewan,
the rich-one never any child got,

niuwan ein tohter, diu hete man.
except a daughter, who had husband.

1070

nu wart der abbet enein
now became the abbot agreed

vil guoter fuoge mit den zwein,
of-very good contrivance with the two,

daz sich der ermere man
that himself the poorer man

næme daz kint an
should-take the child to

und ez dâ nâhen bî im züge,
and it there near by him should-rear,

1075

und den liuten alsus lüge,
and to-the people thus should-lie,

swer in ze deheiner stunde
whoever him at any hour

frâgen begunde
to-ask began

wâ er daz kint hete genomen,
where he the child had taken,

- 1080 daz ez im wære komen
that it to-him were come
 von sînes bruoder tohter
from his brother's daughter
 (deheinen list enmohter
(no device could-be
 erdenken sô gefüegen);
devise so fitting);
 unde daz si ez trüegen,
and that they it should-carry,
- 1085 sô sî wol gebiten sît
when they well waited should-have
 unze nâch der messezīt,
until after the mass-time,
 und man den abbet bæte
and one the abbot should-beg
 daz er sô wol tæte
that he so well should-do
 und daz kint selbe toufte
and the child himself should-baptize
- 1090 und dâ mite koufte
and there with should-buy
 got unde ir dienesthaften muot.
God and their serviceable spirit.
 der rât was gevüege und guot.
the counsel was fitting and good.
 Nu nam der abbet dâ den rât,
Now took the abbot there the provision,
 daz golt und die sîdîne wât,
the gold and the silken cloth,
- 1095 und gab dem armen dô zehant,
and gave to-the poor-one then at-once,
 der sich des kindes underwant,
who himself of-the child took-charge,

zwô marke von golde,
two marks of gold,

dâ mite erz ziehen solde;
there with he-it rear should;

dem andern eine marke,
to-the other one mark,

daz er ez hæle starke.
that he it should-hide strongly.

1100

daz ander truog er von dan,
the rest carried he from thence,

der vil sælige man.
the very blessed man.

vil wol gehielt er im daz,
very well kept he for-him that,

dêswârerne möhte baz;
truly he-not could better;

wand erz ze gewinne kêrte,
for he-it to profit turned,

1105

unz er imz wol gemêrte.
until he for-him-it well increased.

Der arme vischære niht enliez

The poor fisherman not neglected

ern tæte als in sîn herre hiez.
he did as him his lord bade.

dô im der mitte tac kam,
when to-him the mid day came,

daz kint er an den arm nam:
the child he onto the arm took:

1110

sîn wîp gie im allez mite

his woman went him all with

nâch gebiurlichem site

after peasant custom

ze klôster, da er den abbet sach

to cloister, where he the abbot saw

under sînen bruodern. er sprach

among his brothers. he said

1115 'herre, iu sendet ditze kint

'lord, to-you send this child

liute die iu willic sint,

people who to-you willing are,

mîns bruoder tohter unde ir man,

my brother's daughter and her man,

und geloubent starke dar an,

and believe strongly there on,

ob ir ez selbe toufet,

if you it yourself baptize,

1120 dem kinde sî gekoufet

for-the child he bought

dâ mit ein sæligez leben,

there with a blessed life,

und geruocht im iuvern namen geben.'

and deign to-it your name give.'

Diu bete was der münche spot.

The request was the monks' mockery.

sî sprâchen 'seht (sô helfe iu got)

they said 'look (so help you God)

1125 ze disem gebiurischen man,

at this peasantish man,

wie wol er sîne rede kan.'

how well he his speech knows.'

der herre enphie die rede wol,

the lord received the speech well,

als der diemüete sol.
as he-who humble should.

als er daz kint ersach,
when he the child saw,

vor sîner bruoderschaft er sprach
before his brotherhood he said

‘ez ist ein sô schœne kint:
‘it is a so fair child:

sît sî des gotes hûses sint,
since they of-the God’s house are,

dêswâr wir suln inz niht versagen.’
truly we shall to-them-it not refuse.’

daz kint hiez er ze toufe tragen.
the child bade he to baptism carry.

er huop ez selbe und hiez ez sus,
he raised it himself and named it thus,

nâch sînem namen, Grêgôrjus.
after his name, Gregorius.

Dô daz kint die toufe enphie,
When the child the baptism received,

der abbet sprach ‘sît ich nu hie
the abbot said ‘since I now here

sîn geistlich vater worden bin,
its spiritual father become am,

durch mînes heiles gewin
for my salvation’s gain

sô wil ich ez iemer hân
so will I it ever have

(ez ist sô sæleclîch getân)
(it is so blessedly made)

vil gerne an mînes kindes stat.’
very gladly in my child’s place.’

1130

1135

1140

vil minneclîche er dô bat

very lovingly he then asked

1145 den sînen vischære

the his fisherman

daz er sîn vlîzec wære:

that he of-it diligent were:

er sprach 'nu ziuch mirz schône,

he said 'now rear for-me-it fairly,

daz ich dirs immer lône.'

that I to-thee-for-it ever reward.'

daz kint hulfen starke

the child helped strongly

1150 die sîne zwô marke,

the its two marks,

daz man sîn deste baz phlac:

so-that one of-it the better took-care:

ouch lie der herre unmanegen tac

also let the lord not-many-a day

erne wolde selbe spehen

unless-he would himself look

wie daz kint wære besehen.

how the child were looked-after.

The Foundling's Schooling

VIII

At six the abbot takes the boy into the monastery, where he excels in grammar, divinity, and law. The fisherman's wife pries the secret of the gold out of her husband but keeps quiet. Gregorius grows handsome, gentle, and wise, and people say it is a pity he is only a fisherman's son. At fifteen he hurts the fisherman's child at play, and the foster-mother cries out in her rage that he is nothing but a foundling fished from the sea.

Dô der vischære und sîn wîp

When the fisherman and his woman

1155

über des süezen Kindes lîp

over the sweet child's body

sô rehte vlîzic wâren

so truly diligent were

unz ze sehs jâren,

until to six years,

der abbet nam ez dô von in

the abbot took it then from them

zuo im in daz klôster hin,

to him into the cloister away,

1160

und kleidet ez mit solher wât

and clothed it with such garments

diu pfefflichen stât,

as priestly stands,

und hiez ez diu buoch lêren.

and had it the books teach.

swaz ze triuwen unde ze êren

whatever to faithfulness and to honor

und ze frûmecheit gezôch,

and to prowess tended,

1165

wie lûtzel ez dâ von vlôch!

how little it there from fled!

wie gerne ez âne slege mit bete
how gladly it without blows with request

sînes meisters willen tete!
its master's will did!

ezn lie sich niht betrâgen
it let itself not be-wearied

1170 ezn wolde dingelîches vrâgen
it would of-everything ask

diu guot ze wizzenne sint,
which good to know are,

als ein sæligez kint.
as a blessed child.

Diu kint diu vor drin jâren
The children who before three years

zuo gesetzet wâren,
to put were,

1175 mit kunst ez diu sô schiere ervuor
with art it them so quickly overtook

daz der meister selbe swuor,
that the master himself swore,

er gesæhe von aller hande tugent
he should-see of every kind virtue

nie sô sinnerîche jugent.
never so intelligent youth.

er was (da enliuge ich niht an)
he was (there lie I not on)

1180 der jâre ein kint, der witze ein man.
of-the years a child, of-the wit a man.

An sîme einleften jâre

In his eleventh year

dône was ze wâre

then was in truth

dehein bezzer grâmaticus

no better grammarian

danne daz kint Grêgôrjus.

than the child Gregorius.

dar nâch in den jâren drin

there after in the years three

dô gebezzertę sich sîn sîn

then improved itself his mind

alsô daz im divînitats

so that to-him divinity

gar durhliuhtet was:

wholly illumined was:

diu kunst ist von der gotheit.

the art is of the godhead.

swaz im für wart geleit

whatever to-him before was laid

daz lîp und sêle frumend ist,

which body and soul profiting is,

des ergreif er ie den besten list.

of-that grasped he ever the best skill.

dar nâch las er von lêgibus,

there after read he of laws,

und daz kint wart alsus

and the child became thus

in dem selben liste

in the same skill

ein edel lêgiste:

a noble legist:

diu kunst sprichet von der ê.

the art speaks of the law.

1185

1190

1195

er hete noch gelernet mê,
he would-have yet learned more,

wan daz er wart geirret dran
but that he was hindered therein

1200 als ich iu wol gesagen kan.
as I to-you well tell can.

Ez leit der vischære
There suffered the fisherman

von armuot grôze swære.
from poverty great grief.

sîne huobe lâgen ûf dem sê;
his holdings lay upon the sea;

des wart sînem lîbe dicke wê,
of-that became to-his body often woe,

1205 wand er sich alsus nerte,
for he himself thus fed,

sîniu kint erwerte
his children defended

dem bitterm hunger alle tage
against-the bitter hunger all days

niewan mit sînem bejage,
only with his catch,

ê er daz kint funde.
before he the child found.

1210 ouch wart dâ zestunde
also became there at-once

wol gesenftet sîn leben.
well eased his life.

dô im wurden gegeben
when to-him were given

von golde zwô marke,
of gold two marks,

dô bezzerten sich starke

then bettered themselves strongly

alle sîne sache

all his affairs

an gereite und an gemache.

in gear and in comfort.

nu enlie sîn ungewizzen wîp

now left his thoughtless woman

nie geruowen sînen lîp

never rest his person

von tâgelîcher vrâge.

from daily questioning.

sî sazte im manege lâge,

she set for-him many-a snare,

ir liste kêrte sî dar zuo

her cunning turned she there to

beidiu spâte unde vruo

both late and early

wie sî daz vernæme

how she that should-learn

von wanne daz golt kâme.

from where the gold should-come.

vil manegen eit sî im swuor,

very many-a oath she to-him swore,

unz daz sî an im ervuor

until that she from him learned

von wanne im daz golt was komen,

from where to-him the gold was come,

als ir ê wol habt vernomen.

as you before well have heard.

1215

1220

1225

dô daz wîp wol bevant

when the woman well perceived

1230 daz ez niemen was erkant

that it to-no-one was known

wer Grêgôrjus wære,

who Gregorius were,

nune brâhte siz niht ze mære.

now brought she-it not to tidings.

si truog ez schône, daz ist wâr,

she bore it fairly, that is true,

unz an sîn funfzehende jâr.

until to his fifteenth year.

1235 Nu het diu vrouwe Sælicheit

Now had the lady Blessedness

allen wîs an in geleit

in-all ways on him laid

ir vil stätigez marc.

her very steadfast mark.

er was schoene unde starc,

he was fair and strong,

er was getriuwe unde guot

he was faithful and good

1240 und hete gedultigen muot.

and had patient spirit.

er hete künste genuoge,

he had arts enough,

zuht unde fuoge.

breeding and fitness.

er hete unredelîchen zorn

he had unreasonable anger

mit senftem muote verkorn.

with gentle spirit renounced.

1245 alle tage er friunt gewan,

all days he friends gained,

und verlôs dar under nieman.

and lost there among no-one.

sîne vröude und sîn klagen

his joy and his lament

kund er ze rechter mâze tragen.

could he in right measure bear.

lêre was er undertân,

to-teaching was he subject,

und milte des er mohte hân.

and bountiful of-what he could have.

genendic swâ er solde,

bold where he should,

ein zage swâ er wolde,

a coward where he would,

den kinden ze mâze

to-the children in measure

ûf der wîsen strâze.

upon the wise road.

sîn wort gewan nie widerwanc.

his word got never turning-back.

ern tet niht âne fûrgedanc,

he did nothing without forethought,

als im diu wîsheit gebôt:

as to-him the wisdom commanded:

desn wart er nie schamrôt

of-that became he never shame-red

von deheiner sîner getât.

from any his deed.

er suochte genâde unde rât

he sought grace and counsel

zallen zîten an got,

at-all times from God,

und behielt starke sîn gebot.

and kept strongly his commandment.

1250

1255

1260

Got erloubtē dem Wunsche über in

God allowed to-the Ideal over him

daz er lîp unde sin

that he body and mind

1265 meistertē nâch sînem werde.

should-master after his worth.

swâ von ouch ûf der erde

whatever from also upon the earth

dehein man ze lobenne geschiht,

any man to praise befalls,

desn gebrast an im niht.

of-that lacked in him nothing.

der Wunsch het in gemeistert sô

the Ideal had him mastered so

1270 daz er sîn was ze kinde vrô:

that he of-him was as child glad:

wande er nihtes an im vergaz:

for he of-nothing in him forgot:

er heten geschaffet, kunde er, baz.

he would-have-him made, could he, better.

die liute dem knappen jâhen,

the people of-the squire declared,

alle die in gesâhen,

all who him saw,

1275 daz von vischære

that of fisherman

nie geborn wære

never born were

dehein jungelinc sô sælden rîch:

any youth so in-fortune rich:

ez wære harte schädêlich

it were very harmful

daz man in niht mähete

that one him not could

geprîsen von geslächte:

praise for lineage:

1280

und jâhen des ze stæte,

and declared of-that in earnest,

ob erz an gebürte hæte,

if he-it in birth had,

sô wære wol ein rîche lant

so were well a rich land

ze sîner frûmecheit bewant.

to his prowess bestowed.

Nu geviel ez eines tages sus

Now befell it one day thus

1285

daz der knappe Grêgôrjus

that the squire Gregorius

mit sînen spilgenôzen kam

with his playmates came

dâ sî spilnes gezam.

where them of-playing befitted.

nu gefuogtê sich ein wunderlîch geschiht

now befell itself a wondrous happening

(ezn kom von sînem willen niht):

(it came from his will not):

1290

er getet (daz geschach im nie mê)

he did (that happened to-him never more)

des vischæres kinde alsô wê

to-the fisherman's child so woe

daz ez weinen began.

that it to-weep began.

sus lief ez schrîende dan.

thus ran it screaming away.

- 1295 als daz diu muoter vernam
when that the mother heard
 daz ez sus weinende kam,
that it thus weeping came,
 ir kinde sî engegen lief,
to-her child she toward ran,
 in grôzen unsiten sî rief
in great rudeness she cried
 ‘sich, wie weinest du sus?’
‘look, why weepst thou thus?’
- 1300 ‘dâ sluoc mich Grêgôrjus.’
‘there struck me Gregorius.’
 ‘war umbe hât er dich geslagen?’
‘what for has he thee struck?’
 ‘muoter, ich kan dirs niht gesagen.’
‘mother, I can to-thee-of-it not tell.’
 ‘sich her, tæte du im iht?’
‘look here, didst thou to-him anything?’
 ‘muoter, weizgot nein ich niht.’
‘mother, God-knows no I not.’
- 1305 ‘wâ ist er nu?’ ‘bî jenem sê.’
‘where is he now?’ ‘by yonder sea.’
 ‘wê mir armen wîbe, wê!
‘woe me poor woman, woe!
 er tumber gouch vil betrogen!
he foolish fool much deceived!
 hân ich daz an im erzogen
have I that in him reared
 daz er mir bliuwet mîniu kint,
that he for-me beats my children,
- 1310 sô wol gefriunt sô sî hie sint?
so well befriended as they here are?

dinen friunden zimet daz niht wol

to-thy friends befits that not well

daz ich diz laster dulten sol

that I this reproach endure shall

von einem sô gewanten man,

from a so disposed man,

der nie mâge hie gewan.

who never kinsmen here got.

daz dich tar gebluwen der

that thee dares beat be

der sich hât verrunnen her,

who himself has strayed here,

daz ist mir iemer ein leit.

that is to-me ever a sorrow.

wan daz man imz durch got vertreit,

but that one to-him-it for God endures,

man dulte ez vil unlange vrist.

one would-endure it very short time.

jane weiz nieman wer er ist.

indeed knows no-one who he is.

[und ist daz ich nu leben sol,

[and (if)-is that I now live shall,

ich sag ez al der werlte wol

I tell it to-all the world well

daz er ein funtkint ist

that he a foundling is

(sô helfe mir der heilege Krist),

(so help me the holy Christ),

swie hôhe  r nu s  gesezzen.

however high he now be seated.

1315

1320

1325

des hât er gar vergezzen

of-that has he wholly forgotten

daz er sô jâmerlîch wart funden

that he so miserably was found

in ein vaz gebunden

in a cask bound

in einer barke ûf dem sê.

in a boat upon the sea.

1330 sol er mînem kinde tuon wê,

(if)-shall he to-my child do woe,

man dultet ez unlange vrist.

one endures it short time.

jane weiz hie nieman wer er ist.]

indeed knows here no-one who he is.]

wê mir, wes ist im gedâht?

woe me, of-what is by-him thought?

der tiuvel hât in her brâht

the devil has him hither brought

1335 mir ze einer harnschar.

for-me as a torment.

ja erkenne ich sîn geverte gar,

indeed know I his course wholly,

er fundene dürftige.

he found beggar.

wan wolde er daz man verswige

why-not would he that one should-keep-silent

sîn schântliche sache?

his shameful matter?

1340 sô lebte er mit gemache.

so would-live he with comfort.

die vische sîn verwâzen,

the fish be cursed,

daz sî in niene vrâzen,

that they him not-at-all devoured,

do er ûf den sê geworfen wart.

when he upon the sea thrown was.

er ergreif ein sælige vart,

he hit-upon a blessed journey,

daz er dem abte zuo kam.

that he to-the abbot to came.

wan daz ern dînem vater nam

but that he-him from-thy father took

und sîn almuosenære ist,

and his almsman is,

sô müese er uns, wizze Krist,

so would-have-to he to-us, know Christ,

anders undertænic sîn:

otherwise subject be:

er müese uns rinder unde swîn

he would-have-to for-us cattle and swine

trîben ûz unde in.

drive out and in.

war tet dîn vater sînen sin,

where put thy father his mind,

do er in mit frostiger hant

when he him with freezing hand

ûf dem gemeinen sê vant,

upon the common sea found,

daz er in dem abbte liez

that he him to-the abbot left

und in im selben niene hiez

and him to himself not-at-all bade

dienen sam durch allez reht

serve as by all right

tæte sîn schalc und sîn kneht?’

should-do his knave and his servant?’

1345

1350

1355

Monk or Knight

IX

Running after the child he struck, Gregorius overhears his nurse scolding and learns that he is a foundling. He goes to the abbot, thanks him, and says shame will drive him from the land. The abbot urges him to stay and promises him the abbacy, but Gregorius says his parents may be of knightly birth and he would gladly be a knight. The abbot warns that a cleric turned knight endangers his soul and will ride badly. Gregorius replies that even over his books he dreamed of shield and lance, and describes how well he would sit a horse and joust.

Grêgôrjus, do er daz kint gesluoc,

Gregorius, when he the child struck,

1360 dar umbe was er trûrec gnuoc,

there about was he sad enough,

und lief im ze hûse nâch.

and ran him to house after.

dar umbe was im alsô gâch

there about was to-him so hasty

daz er des sêre vorhte

that he of-that sorely feared

daz im daz kint entworhte

that for-him the child should-spoil

1365 sîner ammen minne.

his nurse's love.

nu erhôrte er sî dar inne

now heard he her there inside

schelten âne mâze.

scold without measure.

nu gestuont er an der strâze,

now stood-still he on the street,

unz er den itewîz vernam

until he the reproach heard

und unverwister dinge kam

and of-unknown things came

1370

gar an ein ende,

wholly to an end,

daz er ellende

that he exiled

wære in dem lande,

were in the land,

wan sî in ofte nande.

for she him often named.

sîn vröude wart verborgen

his joy became hidden

1375

in disen niuwen sorgen.

in these new cares.

er gedâhte im grôzer swære,

he thought to-himself great grief,

ob disiu rede wære

whethere this speech were

ein lüge ode ein wârheit,

a lie or a truth,

die sîn amme hete geseit,

whiche his nurse had said,

1380

unde gâhte dô zehant

and hastened then at-once

ze klôster, da er den abbet vant,

to cloister, where he the abbot found,

und nam den getriuwen man

and took the faithful man

von den liuten sunder hin dan.

from the people apart away thence.

1385 Er sprach 'mîn vil lieber herre,
He said 'my very dear lord,

ich kan iu niht sô verre
I can to-you not so far

genâden mit dem munde,
thank with the mouth,

als, ob ich kunde,
as, if I could,

vil gerne tæte.
very gladly would-do.

1390 nu belîbe ich dar an stæte
now remain I there on constant

daz ich unz an mînes tôdes zil
that I until to my death's goal

den dar umbe biten wil
him there about ask will

der deheiner guottât
who any good-deed

niemer ungelônnet lât,
never unrewarded leaves,

1395 daz er iu des lône
that he you for-it reward

mit der himelischen krône
with the heavenly crown

(dêswâr des hân ich michel reht)
(truly of-that have I much right)

daz ir mich ellenden kneht
that you me exiled servant

von einem funden kinde
from a found child

1400 für allez iuwer gesinde
before all your household

sô zartlîchen habt erzogen.
so tenderly have reared.

leider ich bin des betrogen,

alas I am of-that deceived,

ichn bin niht der ich wânde sîn.

I am not who I thought to-be.

nu sult ir, lieber herre mîn,

now shall you, dear lord mine,

mir durch got gebieten.

me for God dismiss.

ich sol und muoz mich nieten

I shall and must myself endure

nôt und angest (daz ist reht)

distress and fear (that is right)

als ein ellender kneht.

as an exiled servant.

Mir hât mîn amme des verjehen

To-me has my nurse of-it declared

(in einem zorn ist daz geschehen)

(in an anger is that happened)

daz ich funden bin.

that I found am.

beidiu lîp unde sîn

both body and mind

benimt mir diu unêre,

takes from-me the dishonor,

vernim ichs iemmer mêre.

(if)-bear I-of-it ever more.

ichn hœre sî weizgot niemer mê,

I bear her God-knows never more,

wand ich niht langer hie bestê.

for I not longer here remain.

1405

1410

1415

jâ vinde ich eteswâ daz lant
indeed find I somewhere the land

daz dâ niemen ist erkant
that there to-no-one is known

wie ich her komen bin.
how I hither come am.

1420 ich hân die kunst und ouch den sin,
I have the art and also the mind,

ich genise wol, und wil ez got.
I thrive well, if wills it God.

sô sêre fürhte ich den spot:
so sorely fear I the mockery:

ich wold ê sîn dâ niemen ist,
I would rather be where no-one is,

ê daz ich für dise vrist
before that I beyond this time

1425 belibe hie ze lande.
should-remain here in land.

jâ vertribet mich diu schande.
indeed drives-away me the disgrace.

diu wîp sint sô unverdagt:
the women are so unsilent:

sît sî ez eines hât gesagt,
since she it once has said,

sô wizzen ez vil schiere
so know it very soon

1430 drîe unde viere
three and four

und dar nâch alle die hie sint.
and there after all who here are.'

Der abbet sprach 'vil liebez kint,
The abbot said 'very dear child,

nu hœre: ich wil dir râten wol,
now hear: I will to-thee counsel well,

als ich mînem lieben sol,
as I to-my dear-one should,

den ich von kinde gezogen hân.
whom I from child reared have.

1435

got hât vil wol zuo dir getân:
God has very well to thee done:

er hât von sînen minnen
he has from his love

an lîbe unde an sinnen
in body and in senses

dir vil vrîe wal gegeben,
to-thee very free choice given,

daz du nu selbe dîn leben
that thou now thyself thy life

1440

maht schepfen unde kêren
canst shape and turn

ze schanden ode ze êren.
to disgrace or to honor.

nu muost du disen selben strît,
now must thou this same strife,

in disen jâren, ze dirre zît,
in these years, at this time,

under disen beiden
between these two

1445

nâch dîner kûr scheiden,
after thy choice decide,

swaz du dir wilt erwerben,
whatever thou for-thyself wilt win,

genesen ode verderben,
be-saved or perish,

daz du des nu beginnen solt.
that thou of-that now begin shalt.

sun, nu wis dir selben holt,
son, now be to-thee thyself devoted,

1450

und volge mîner lêre

and follow my teaching

(sô hâst du tugent und êre

(so hast thou virtue and honor

für laster und für spot erkorn),

instead-of reproach and instead-of mockery chosen),

daz dir durch dînen tumben zorn

lest to-thee through thy foolish anger

1455 der werke iht werde sô gâch

of-the deeds at-all become so hasty

daz ez dich geriuwe dar nâch.

that it thee should-rue there after.

Du bist ein sælic jungelinc,

Thou art a blessed youth,

ze wunsche stânt dir dîniu dinc,

to wish stand for-thee thy things,

dîn begin ist harte guot,

thy beginning is very good,

1460 diu liute tragent dir holden muot

the people bear to-thee kindly spirit

die in disen landen sint.

who in these lands are.

nu volge mir, mîn liebez kint.

now follow me, my dear child.

du bist der pfafheit gewon:

thou art to-the priesthood accustomed:

nu entziuch dich niht dâ von.

now withdraw thyself not there from.

1465 du wirst der buoche wîse:

thou becomest of-the books wise:

sô bin ich der jâre grîse,

so am I of-the years gray,

mîn lîp ist schiere gelegen:

my body is soon laid-low:

nu wil ich dir für wâr verpflegen

now will I to-thee for true pledge

daz ich dir nu erwirbe,

that I for-thee now win,

swenn ich darnâch erstirbe,

when I thereafter die,

umb unser samenunge,

from our community,

alte unde junge,

old and young,

daz sî dich nement ze herren.

that they thee take for lord.

nu waz mac dir gewerren

now what can thee trouble

einer toerinne klaffen?

a madwoman's chatter?

ouch trûwe ich wol geschaffen

also trust I well to-arrange

daz diu rede für dise stunt

that the speech from this hour

nimmer kumt vür ir munt.'

never comes before her mouth.'

Grêgôrjus sprach 'herre,

Gregorius said 'lord,

ir habet got vil verre

you have God very far

an mir armen gêret

in me poor-one honored

und iuwer heil gemêret

and your salvation increased

und nu daz beste für geleit.

and now the best before laid.

1470

1475

1480

nu ist mir mîn tumpheit

now is to-me my folly

1485 alsô sêre erbolgen,

so sorely angered,

sîne lât mich iu niht volgen.

it lets me you not follow.

mich vertribent drîe sache

me drive three things

ze mînem ungemache

to my discomfort

ûzer disem lande.

out-of this land.

1490 daz eine ist diu schande

the one is the disgrace

die ich von itewîze hân.

which I from reproach have.

sô ist diu ander sô getân

so is the other so made

diu mich ouch verjaget hin:

which me also chases away:

ich weiz nu daz ich niene bin

I know now that I not-at-all am

1495 disse vischæres kint.

this fisherman's child.

nu waz ob mîne vordern sint

now what if my forebears are

von solhem geslâhte

of such lineage

daz ich wol werden mâte

that I well become might

ritter, ob ich hæte

knight, if I had

1500 den willen und daz geræte?

the will and the gear?

weiz got nu was ie mîn muot,
knows God now was ever my spirit,

hæt ich die geþurt und daz guot,
had I the birth and the goods,

ich würde gerne ritter.
I would-become gladly knight.

daz süeze honec ist bitter
the sweet honey is bitter

einem ieglichen man
to-an every man

1505

der ez geniezen niene kan.
who it enjoy not-at-all can.

ir habt daz süezeste leben
you have the sweetest life

daz got der werlde hât gegeben:
whiche God to-the world has given:

swer imz ze rehte hât erkorn,
whoever for-himself-it to right has chosen,

der ist sælic geborn.
he is blessed born.

1510

ich belibe hie lîhte stæte,
I would-remain here perhaps constant,

ob ich den willen hæte
if I the will had

des ich leider niht enhân.
whiche I alas not have.

ze ritterschefte stât mîn wân.
to knighthood stands my expectation.'

‘Sun, dîn rede enist niht guot:
‘Son, thy speech is not good:

1515

durch got bekêre dînen muot.
for God convert thy spirit.

swer sich von pfaffen bilde

whoever himself from priest's image

gote machet wilde

to-God makes wild

unde ritterschaft begât,

and knighthood practices,

1520 der muoz mit maneger missetât

he must with many-a misdeed

verwürken sêle unde lîp.

forfeit soul and body.

swelch man ode wîp

whatever man or woman

sich von gote wendet,

himself from God turns,

der wirt dâ von geschendet

he becomes there from disgraced

1525 und der helle verselt.

and to-the hell sold.

sun, ich hete dich erwelt

son, I had thee chosen

ze einem gotes kinde:

as a God's child:

ob ich ez an dir vinde,

if I it in thee find,

des wil ich immer wesen vrô.'

of-that will I ever be glad.'

1530 Grêgôrjus antwurte im dô

Gregorius answered him then

'Ritterschaft daz ist ein leben,

'Knighthood that is a life,

der im die mâze kan gegeben,

who to-it the measure can give,

sone mac niemen baz genesen.

so can no-one better be-saved.

er mac gotes ritter gerner wesen
he can God's knight more-gladly be

dann ein betrogen klôsterman.'
than a deceived cloister-man.'

1535

'sun, nu fürhte ich dîn dar an:
'son, now fear I for-thee there in:

dune kanst ze ritterschaft niht:
thou knowest of knighthood nothing:

sô man dich danne gesiht
when one thee then sees

umbehendeclîchen rîten,
clumsily ride,

sô muost du ze allen zîten
so must thou at all times

1540

dulten ander ritter spot.
endure other knights' mockery.

noch erwint, vil lieber sun, durch got.'
yet turn-back, very dear son, for God.'

'herre, ich bin ein junger man
'lord, I am a young man

und lerne des ich niht enkan.
and learn what I not know.

swar ich die sinne wenden wil,
wherever I the senses turn will,

1545

des gelerne ich schiere vil.'
of-that learn I soon much.'

'Sun, mir saget vil maneger munt,
'Son, to-me says very many-a mouth,

dem ze ritterschaft ist kunt,
to-whom of knighthood is known,

swer dâ ze schuolē belibe

whoever there at school remains

1550 und er dâ vertribe

and he there spends

ungeriten zwelf jâr,

unridden twelve years,

der müeze iemer für wâr

he must ever for true

gebâren nâch den pfaffen.

behave after the priests.

du bist vil wol geschaffen

thou art very well made

1555 ze einem gotes kinde

as a God's child

und ze kôrgesinde:

and for choir-household:

diu kuttē gestuont nie manne baz.'

the cowl became never man better'

'herre nu versuocht ouch daz,

'lord now try also that,

und gebet mir ritterliche wât:

and give me knightly garments:

1560 dês wâr ob sî mir missestât,

truly if it me ill-becomes,

sô gan ich ir wol eim andern man

so grant I it gladly to-an other man

und lege die kutten wider an.

and lay the cowl back on.

herre, iu ist vil wâr geseit:

lord, to-you is very truly said:

ez bedarf vil wol gewonheit

it needs very well custom

1565 swer guot ritter wesen sol.

whoever good knight be shall.

ouch hân ich ez gelernet wol

also have I it learned well

von kinde in mînem muote hie:

from child in my spirit here:

ezn kom ûz mînem sinne nie.

it came out-of my mind never.

ich sage iu, sît der stunde

I tell you, since the hour

daz ich bedenken kunde

that I think could

beidiu übel unde guot,

both ill and good,

sô stuont ze ritterschaft mîn muot.

so stood to knighthood my spirit.

ichn wart nie mit gedanke

I became never with thought

ein Beier noch ein Franke.

a Bavarian nor a Franconian.

swelch ritte ze Henegouwe,

whatever knight in Hainault,

ze Brâbant und ze Haspengouwe,

in Brabant and in Hesbaye,

ze orse ie aller bestę gesaz,

on horse ever of-all best sat,

sô kan ichz mit gedanken baz.

so can I-it with thoughts better.

herre, swaz ich der buoche kan,

lord, whatever I of-the books know,

dâne gerou mich nie niht an

there rued me never anything of

und kund ir gerne mêre:

and would-know of-them gladly more:

1570

1575

1580

iedoch sô man mich sêre

nevertheless when one me sorely

ie unz her ze den buochen twanc,

ever until now to the books compelled,

sô turnierte mîn gedanc.

so tourneyed my thought.

1585 sô man mich der buoche wente,

when one me to-the books accustomed,

wie sich mîn herze sente

how itself my heart longed

und mîn gedanc spilte

and my thought played

gegen einem schilte!

toward a shield!

ouch was mir ie vil ger

also was to-me ever very desire

1590 für den griffel zuo dem sper,

instead-of the stylus to the spear,

für die veder ze dem swerte.

instead-of the quill to the sword.

daz ist des ich ie gerte.

that is what I ever desired.

mînen gedanken wart nie baz

to-my thoughts became never better

danne sô ich z' orse gesaz

than when I on horse sat

1595 und den schilt ze halse genam,

and the shield at neck took,

und daz sper ze hant alsam,

and the spear in hand likewise,

und daz undern arm gesluoc,

and it under-the arm struck,

und mich daz ors von sprunge truoc.

and me the horse from bound carried.

sô liez ich die schenkel vliegen:

so let I the legs fly:

die kunde ich sô gebiegen

them could I so bend

1600

daz ich daz ors mit sporn sluoc,

that I the horse with spur struck,

weder ze den lanken noch in den buoc,

neither at the flanks nor in the chest,

dâ hinder eines vingers breit

there behind a finger's breadth

dâ der surzengel ist geleit.

where the girth is laid.

neben der mane vlugen diu bein,

beside the mane flew the legs,

1605

ob des sateles ich schein

over the saddle I appeared

als ich wære gemâlet dar.

as I were painted there.

ders möhte hân genomen war,

he-who-it might have taken heed,

mit guoter gehabe ich reit

with good bearing I rode

âne des lîbes arbeit:

without the body's hardship:

1610

ich gab im senften gelimpf

I gave to-it gentle manner

als ez wære mîn schimpf.

as it were my sport.

und sô ich mich mit sporen vleiz

and when I myself with spurs exerted

ûf einen langen puneiz,

upon a long charge,

- 1615 sô kunde ich wol gewenden
so could I well turn
- daz ros ze beiden henden.
the steed to both hands.
- gejustierte ich ie wider keinen man,
should-joust I ever against any man,
- dâ gevâlte ich nie an,
there would-fail I never at,
- mîn merken würde wol bewant
my aiming would-become well bestowed
- 1620 ze den vier nageln gegen der hant.
at the four nails toward the hand.
- nu helfet, lieber herre, mir
now help, dear lord, me
- daz diu ritterlîche gir
that the knightly desire
- mit werken müeze volgân:
with deeds may follow-through:
- sô habt ir wol zuo mir getân.
so have you well to me done.'

The Tablet Read, and the Voyage

X

The abbot has him knighted and dressed in the silk from the cask, then offers him a rich marriage if he stays. Gregorius wants to win honor by his own strength. The abbot shows him the tablet and the gold, which has grown to a hundred and fifty marks. Gregorius weeps for the sin he was born in and, refusing the cloister, resolves to wander until God shows him who he is. He sails away, and the two part in tears.

‘Sun, du hâst mir vil geseit,

‘Son, thou hast to-me much said,

manic tiutsch wort für geleit,

many-a German word before laid,

daz mich vil sêre umbe dich

that me very sorely about thee

wundern muoz, crêde mich,

wonder must, believe me,

und weiz niht war zuo daz sol,

and know not what for that shall,

ich vernæme kriechisch alsô wol.

I would-hear Greek just-as well.

unser meister, der dîn phlac

our master, who of-thee took-care

mit lêre unz an disen tac,

with teaching until to this day,

von dem hâst du si niht vernomen.

from him hast thou them not heard.

von swannen sî dir zuo sîn komen,

from wherever they to-thee to be come,

du bist, daz merke ich wol dar an,

thou art, that mark I well there by,

des muotes niht ein klôsterman.

of-the spirit not a cloister-man.

1625

1630

1635

nu wil ich dichs niht wenden mê.

now will I thee-from-it not turn more.

got gebe daz ez dir wol ergê,

God grant that it for-thee well go,

und gebe dir durch sîne kraft

and grant thee through his power

1640 heil zuo dîner ritterschaft.'

weal to thy knighthood.'

Nu schuof er daz man im sneit

Now arranged be that one for-him cut

von dem selben phelle kleit,

from the same silk clothes,

den er dâ bî im vant:

whiche be there by him found:

ezn kom nie bezzer in daz lant.

it came never better into the land.

1645 er sach wol daz im was gâch,

he saw well that to-him was hasty,

unde machte in dar nâch

and made him there after

ritter als im wol tohte

knight as for-him well befitted

sô er schierest mohte.

as he soonest could.

Grêgôrjus, dô er ritter wart,

Gregorius, when he knight became,

1650 dannoch heter im niht enbart

yet had-be to-him not revealed

umb sîne tavel und umb sîn golt.

about his tablet and about his gold.

er was im alsô starke holt

he was to-him so strongly devoted

daz erz in hal durch einen list:

that be-it from-him hid through a device:

er gedâhte 'sît er nu ritter ist

he thought 'since he now knight is

und er des guotes niene hât,

and he of-the goods not-at-all has,

sô hoert er lîhte mînen rât

so hears he perhaps my counsel

und belîbet noch durch guot gemach.'

and remains still for good comfort.'

er versuocht ez aber unde sprach

he tried it again and said

'noch belîbe, lieber sun, bî mir.

'still remain, dear son, by me.

dêswâr ich gefüege dir

truly I arrange for-thee

ein alsô rîche hîrât

a so rich marriage

diu wol nâch dînem willen stât,

which well after thy will stands,

unde gîbe dir al die vrist

and give thee all the time

daz du vil schône varende bist.

that thou very finely faring art.

du hâst gewonnen ritters namen:

thou hast won knight's name:

nu muost du dich dîner armuot schamen.

now must thou thyself of-thy poverty be-ashamed.

nu waz touc dîn ritterschaft,

now what avails thy knighthood,

dune hetest guotes die kraft?

thou-not hadst of-goods the strength?

nu enkumst du in dehein lant

now comest thou into no land

dâ du iemen sîst erkant:

where thou to-anyone art known:

1655

1660

1665

1670

dane hâst du vriunt noch vorder habe:

there-not hast thou friend nor former property:

sich, dâ verdirbest du abe.

look, there perishest thou away.

noch bekêre dînen muot,

yet convert thy spirit,

und belîp: daz ist dir guot.'

and remain: that is for-thee good.'

1675 Grêgôrjus sprach 'herre,

Gregorius said 'lord,

versuochetz niht sô verre.

try-it not so far.

wold ich gemach für êre,

would I comfort instead-of honor,

sô volgte ich iuwer lêre

so would-follow I your teaching

und lieze nider mînen muot:

and would-let down my spirit:

1680 wan mîn gemach wære hie guot.

for my comfort would-be here good.

jâ tuot ez manegem schaden

indeed does it to-many-a-one harm

der der habe ist überladen:

who with-the property is overladen:

der verlît sich durch gemach;

he lies-idle himself through comfort;

daz dem armen nie geschach,

which to-the poor-one never befell,

1685 der dâ rehte ist gemuot:

who there rightly is minded:

wandê der arbeitê umbe guot

for he toils for goods

den lîp manegen enden.

the body in-many places.

wie möhte erz baz gewenden?

how could be-it better turn?

wan ob er sich gewirden kan,

but if he himself make-worthy can,

er wirt vil lichte ein sælic man

he becomes very likely a blessed man

1690

unde über diu lant

and over the lands

für manegen herren erkant.

before many-a lord known.

daz ich heize ein arm man,

that I am-called a poor man,

dâ bin ich unschuldec an.

there am I innocent of.

ich trage sî alle samet hie,

I carry them all together here,

1695

die huobe die mir mîn vater lie.

the holdings which to-me my father left.

sît ez mir nu sô geziuhet

since it to-me now so befits

daz diu Sælde von mir vliuhet

that the Fortune from me flees

und ich niewan ir gruoß

and I only her greeting

mit frumecheit gedienen muoz,

with prowess earn must,

1700

dêswâr ich kan sî wol erjagen,

truly I can her well hunt-down,

sine welle sich mir mê versagen

unless-she will herself to-me more refuse

dan si sich noch iemen versagte

than she herself yet to-anyone refused

der sî ze rehte jagte.

who her to right hunted.

- 1705 *sus sol man sî erloufen,*
 thus shall one her run-down,
 mit kumber sælde koufen.
 with affliction fortune buy.
 dâne zwîvel ich niht an,
 there doubt I not of,
 wird ich ein rehte frumer man
 (if)-become I a truly valiant man
 an lîbe unde an sinne,
 in body and in mind,
- 1710 *ichn gediene wol ir minne:*
 I earn well her love:
 unde bin ich aber ein zage,
 and (if)-am I however a coward,
 sone müeze ich niemer drîe tage
 so may I never three days
 geleben, so ich hinnen kêre.
 live, when I hence turn.
 waz solde ich âne êre?
 what should I without honor?
- 1715 *ob ich mit rehter arbeit,*
 if I with right hardship,
 mit sinne und mit manheit,
 with mind and with manhood,
 erwirbe guot und êre,
 win goods and honor,
 des prîset man mich mêre
 of-that praises one me more
 danne dem sîn vater wunder lie
 than him-to-whom his father wonders left
- 1720 *und daz mit schanden zergie.*
 and that with disgrace wasted.

Wes bedarf ich mê danne ich hân?

Of-what need I more than I have?

mîniu ors sint guot und wol getân,

my horses are good and well made,

mîne knehte biderbe unde guot

my servants worthy and good

und hânt getriulichen muot:

and have faithful spirit:

sô bin ich ze harnasche wol:

so am I in armor well:

swâ man guot bejagen sol,

wherever one goods win shall,

dâ getrûwe ich harte wol genesen.

there trust I very well to-thrive.

diz sol der rede ein ende wesen:

this shall of-the speech an end be:

herre, iuvern gnâden sî genigen

lord, to-your grace be bowed

und des mit hulden verzigē

and of-that with favor renounced

daz ich iht langer hie bestê.

that I at-all longer here remain.'

‘Sun, sô wil ich dich niht mê

‘Son, so will I thee not more

sûmen für dise vrist

delay beyond this time

(ich sihe wol daz dir ernest ist),

(I see well that to-thee earnest is),

swie ungerne ich dîn enbir.

however unwillingly I thee do-without.

lieber sun, nu ganc mit mir:

dear son, now go with me:

1725

1730

1735

wan ich wil dich sehen lân

for I will thee see let

waz ich noch dînes dinges hân.'

what I still of-thy things have.'

Sus fuorte in der getriuwe man

Thus led him the faithful man

1740 vil sêre weinende dan

very sorely weeping away

ûf eine kemenâten,

up-to a chamber,

die er vil wol berâten

whith he very well supplied

mit sîdîner wæte vant,

with silken garments found,

und gab im in sîne hant

and gave him into his hand

1745 sîne tavel, daz er las

his tablet, so-that he read

wie allem sînem dinge was.

how with-all his affairs was.

des wart er trûrec unde vrô.

of-that became he sad and glad.

sîn trûren schuof sich alsô

his mourning shaped itself so

als ich iu hie kûnde:

as I to-you here make-known:

1750 er weinde von der sünde,

he wept for the sin,

dâ er inne was geboren.

where he in was born.

dâ wider hâte er im erkorn

there against had he for-himself chosen

guote vröude dar abe,

good joy there from,

von hôher geburt, von rîcher habe,
of high birth, of rich property,

der er ê niht enweste.

of-which he before not knew.

dô sprach der triuwen veste

then spoke the in-faithfulness firm-one

der sîn herre was gewesen

who his lord was been

‘sun, nu hâst du wol gelesen

‘son, now hast thou well read

daz ich dich unz her hân verdagt:

what I thee until now have concealed:

dîn tavel hât dirz wol gesagt.

thy tablet has thee-it well told.

nu hân ich mit dînem golde

now have I with thy gold

gebâret als ich solde

dealt as I should

nâch dîner muoter gebote:

according-to thy mother’s command:

ich hân dir ez in gote

I have for-thee it in God

gemêret harte starke.

increased very strongly.

funfzec und hundert marke

fifty and a-hundred marks

hân wir dir gewinnen,

have we for-thee won,

swie übele wirz kunnen,

however badly we-it know-how,

von sibenzehen sît den stunden

from seventeen since the hours

daz wir dich êrste funden.

that we thee first found.

1755

1760

1765

1770

ich gap in drî und niht mê,

I gave to-them three and not more,

die dich mir brâhten ab dem sê.

who thee to-me brought from the sea.

alsus vil ist dîner habe:

thus much is of-thy property:

dâ begêst du dich schône abe

there supportest thou thyself finely from

1775 zuo anderm gewinne,

toward other gain,

hâst du deheine sinne?

(if)-hast thou any senses.'

Des antwurt im Grêgôrjus

To-that answered him Gregorius

vil sêre weinende sus.

very sorely weeping thus.

'ouwê, lieber herre,

'alas, dear lord,

1780 ich bin vervallen verre

I am fallen far

ân alle mîne schulde.

without all my guilt.

wie sol ich gotes hulde

how shall I God's favor

gewinnen nâch der missetât

win after the misdeed

diu hie vor mir gescriben stât?

which here before me written stands?'

1785 'vil lieber sun, daz sage ich dir.

'very dear son, that tell I thee.

dêswâr, des gelouben mir,

truly, of-that believe me,

gestât du bî der ritterschaft,

(if)-remainest thou by the knighthood,

sich, sô mêret sich diu kraft

look, so increases itself the power

dîner tægelichen missetât,

of-thy daily misdeed,

unde enwirt dîn niemer rât,

and becomes of-thee never remedy,

1790

dâ von sô lâ dîn irrecheit

there from so let thy error

die du an hâst geleit,

which thou on hast laid,

unde diene gote hie.

and serve God here.

jane übersach er dienest nie.

indeed overlooked he service never.

sun, nu stant im hie ze klage,

son, now stand to-him here in lament,

1795

und verkoufe dîne kurze tage

and sell thy short days

umb daz êwige leben.

for the eternal life.

sun, den rât wil ich dir geben.'

son, that counsel will I thee give.'

'Ouwê, lieber herre,

'Alas, dear lord,

jâ ist mîn gir noch merre

indeed is my desire yet greater

1800

zuo der werlte denne ê.

toward the world than before.

ichn geruowe niemer mê

I rest never more

und wil iemer varnde sîn,

and will ever faring be,

mirn tuo noch gotes gnâde schîn
unless-for-me make yet God's grace evident

1805 von wanne ich sî ode wer.'
from where I am or who.'

'sun, des bewîse dich der
'son, of-that instruct thee he

der dich nâch im gebildet hât,
who thee after himself formed has,

sît du verwirfest mînen rât.'
since thou rejectest my counsel.'

Ein schef wart im bereite,
A ship was for-him readied,

1810 dâ man im an leite
where one for-him in laid

zem lîbe volleclichen rât,
for-the body full provision,

spîse, sîn golt, sîne wât.
food, his gold, his garments.

und dô er ze scheffe gie,
and when he to ship went,

der abbet begab in nie
the abbot left him never

1815 unz er an daz schef getrat.
until he onto the ship stepped.

alsus rûnte er daz stat.
thus left he the shore.

swie sêre sî gescheiden diu tugent
however sorely be separated the virtue

under âlter und under jugent,
between age and between youth,

so ergie doch von in beiden
so came-about yet from them both

1820 ein jâmerlîchez scheiden.
a piteous parting.

sine mohten der ougen

they could of-the eyes

ein ander niht verlougen

one another not deny

unz sî sich vor dem breiten sê

until they themselves before the broad sea

enmohten undersehen mê.

could-not see-each-other more.

The Besieged City

XI

The winds carry Gregorius to his mother's land, where only her chief city still holds out against the duke she refused. He offers his service and asks to see the lady, who shows herself to no one. She notices that his clothes match the silk she laid with her child. They are drawn to each other, and Gregorius wins fame in the fighting. But the duke, called the best knight anywhere, jousts alone before the gate and captures every challenger until none dares face him.

Nu bôt der ellende

Now offered the exiled-one

herze unde hende

heart and hands

ze himel und bat vil verre

to heaven and prayed very greatly

daz in unser herre

that him our lord

sante in etelîchez lant

should-send into some land

đâ sîn vart wære bewant.

where his journey were bestowed.

1825

1830

er gebôt den marnæren
he commanded the sailors

daz sî den winden wæren
that they to-the winds were

nâch ir willen undertân
after their will subject

und daz schef liezen gân
and the ship should-let go

1835 swar ez die winde lêrten,
wherever it the winds taught,

und anders niene kêrten.
and otherwise not-at-all should-turn.

ein starc wint in dô wæte:
a strong wind them then blew:

der beleip in stæte,
it remained for-them steady,

und wurden in vil kurzen tagen
and were in very short days

1840 von einem sturme geslagen
by a storm struck

ûf sîner muoter lant.
upon his mother's land.

daz was verheret und verbrant,
that was ravaged and burned,

als ich iu ê gesaget hân,
as I to-you before said have,

daz ir niht mêre was verlân
so-that to-her not more was left

1845 niewan ir houbestat,
except her chief-city,

diu ouch mit kumber was besat.
which also with affliction was besieged.

und als er die stat an sach,
and when he the city at looked,

zuo den marnæren er dô sprach
to the sailors he then spoke

daz sî dar wanten
that they there-toward should-turn

die segele unde lanten. 1850
the sails and should-land.

Dô die burgære sâhen
When the burghers saw

daz schef dort zuo gâhen,
the ship yonder toward hasten,

dô sazten sî sich mit her
then set they themselves with army

disem scheffe ze wer.
against-this ship to defense.

nu zeigte in der ellende 1855
now showed to-them the exiled-one

fridelîche hende
peaceful hands

und vrâgte die burgære
and asked the burghers

waz ir angest wære.
what their fear were.

des nam sî besunder
of-that took them apart

alle michel wunder, 1860
all great wonder,

von wannen der herre
from where the lord

gevarn wære sô verre
come were so far

daz er des niene weste.
that he of-it not-at-all knew.

ir einer der beste

of-them one the best

1865 undersagte im vil gar,

informed him very wholly,

als ich iu ê, waz in war.

as I to-you before, what to-them was.

Als er ir nôt hâte vernomen,

When he their distress had heard,

er sprach 'sô bin ich rehte komen.

he said 'so am I rightly come.

daz ist des ich got ie bat,

that is what I God ever prayed,

1870 daz er mich bræhte an die stat

that he me should-bring to the place

dâ ich ze tuone funde,

where I to do should-find,

daz ich mîne junge stunde

that I my young hour

niht müezec enlæge,

not idle should-lie,

dâ man urluiges phlæge.

where one war should-practice.

1875 geruochet es diu vrouwe mîn,

(if)-deigns of-it the lady mine,

ich wil ir soldenære sîn.'

I will to-her soldier be.'

Nu sâhen sî daz er wære

Now saw they that he were

vil harte lobebære

very greatly praiseworthy

an lîbe unde an guote:

in body and in goods:

mit willigem muote

with willing spirit

1880

wart er geherberget dô.

was he lodged then.

diu vrouwe was des gastes vrô:

the lady was of-the guest glad:

doch enhete sin dannoch niht gesehen.

yet had she-him still not seen.

nu was im dar an wol geschehen:

now was to-him there in well happened:

den er ze wirte gewan,

whom he as host got,

1885

der was ein harte vrum man,

he was a very valiant man,

der besten einer von der stat.

of-the best one of the city.

swaz er dem gebôt unde bat,

whatever he to-him commanded and asked,

daz fuor nâch sînem muote.

that fared after his spirit.

daz galt er wol mit guote.

that repaid he well with goods.

1890

sîn zerunge was rîche,

his spending was rich,

und doch sô bescheidenlîche

and yet so judiciously

daz im dar under nie gebrast;

that to-him there among never lacked;

des wart er ein werder gast.

of-that became he a worthy guest.

- 1895 Dô er vernam diu mære
 When he heard the tidings
- daz diu vrouwe wære
 that the lady were
- schœne junc und âne man,
 fair young and without man,
- und daz ir daz urliuge dar an
 and that to-her the war there by
- und diu ungenâde geschach
 and the harshness befell
- 1900 daz sî den herzogen versprach,
 that she the duke refused,
- und daz sî ze stæte
 and that she in constancy
- die man versprochen hæte,
 the men refused had,
- dô hæte er sî gerne gesehen:
 then would-have he her gladly seen:
- und wie daz möhte geschehen
 and how that might happen
- 1905 âne missewende,
 without blemish,
- des vrâgte der ellende.
 of-that asked the exiled-one.
- ouch was ir von im geseit
 also was to-her of him said
- diu zuht und diu frûmecheit
 the breeding and the prowess
- daz ouch sî in vil gerne sach;
 that also she him very gladly saw;
- 1910 daz selten gaste dâ geschach.
 which seldom to-guest there befell.

Wan daz was ir älich site:

For that was her constant custom:

dâ erzeigte sî mite

there showed she thereby

ir angestliche swære

her anxious grief

(wan ir was vröude unmære):

(for to-her was joy indifferent):

er wære arm ode rîch,

he were poor or rich,

gast ode heimlich,

guest or familiar,

den lie sî sich nie gesehen.

him let she herself never be-seen.

ezn möhte ze münster geschehen,

unless-it might at minster happen,

dâ sî stuont an ir gebete,

where she stood at her prayer,

als sî ze allen zîten tete,

as she at all times did,

ez benæme ir slâf ode maz.

unless-it should-take-from her sleep or meal.

nu riet der wirt dem gaste daz

now counseled the host to-the guest that

daz er ir truhsæzen bat

that he her steward should-ask

daz er in bræhte an die stat

that he him should-bring to the place

dâ er sî möhte gesehen.

where he her might see.

1915

1920

1925

daz lie der truhsæȝe geschehen

that let the steward happen

er nam in eines tages sît

he took him one day afterward

fruo in einer messeȝit

early at a mass-time

und fuorte in an sîner hant

and led him by his hand

1930 da er sî an ir gebete vant,

where he her at her prayer found,

und lie in sî wol beschouwen.

and let him her well behold.

der truhsæȝe sprach zer vrouwen

the steward said to-the lady

‘vrouwe, grüezet disen man,

‘lady, greet this man,

wand er iu wol gedienen kan.’

for he you well serve can.’

1935 für einen gast enphies ir kint:

as a guest received-she her child:

ouch was sîn herze dar an blint

also was his heart there in blind

unde im unkunt genuoc

and to-him unknown enough

daz in diu selbe vrouwe truoc.

that him the same lady bore.

Nu sach si in vlîzeclîchen an

Now looked she him diligently at

1940 und mê dan sî deheinen man

and more than she any man

vordes ie getæte.

before ever should-do.

daz kom von sîner wæte.

that came from his garments.

dô sî die rehte besach,

when she them rightly looked-over,

wider sich selben sî des jach,

to herself self she of-that declared,

daz daz sîdîne gewant

that the silken clothing

daz sî mit ir selber hant

which she with her own hand

zuo ir kinde het geleit,

to her child had laid,

unde disse gastes kleit,

and this guest's clothes,

gelîche wærn begarwe

alike were wholly

der güete und der varwe:

in-the goodness and in-the color:

ez wære benamen daz selbe gewant,

it were assuredly the same clothing,

ode daz sî von einer hant

or that they by one hand

geworht wæren beide.

wrought were both.

daz ermante sî ir leide.

that reminded her her of-sorrow.

nu behagte im diu vrouwe wol,

now pleased him the lady well,

als einem manne ein wîp sol,

as a man a woman should,

an der nihtes gebrast:

in whom nothing lacked:

ouch behagte ir der gast

also pleased her the guest

baz danne ie man getæte.

better than ever man should-do.

1945

1950

1955

- 1960 daz machten sîne ræte,
that made his counsels,
 der ouch vroun Êven verriet,
who also lady Eve betrayed,
 dô sî von gotes gebote schiet.
when she from God's commandment departed.

Sus bevalch in diu guote
Thus entrusted him the good-one

in des truhsæzen huote
into the steward's keeping

- 1965 unde schieden sich sâ.
and parted themselves straightway.

sîn herze lie er bî ir dâ,
his heart left he by her there,

und vleiz sich deste mære
and strove himself the more

ûf prîs unde ûf êre,
for praise and for honor,

daz er sî hâte gesehen.
that he her had seen.

- 1970 im was sô liebe dran geschehen
to-him was so gladly therein happened

daz er sich dûhte vröudenrîch.
that he himself seemed joy-rich.

nu vant man aller tægelîch
now found one of-all daily

ritterschaft vor der stat,
knightly-deeds before the city,

swie des mannes herze bat
as the man's heart asked

- 1975 ze orse und ze fuoze.
on horse and on foot.

daz was sîn unmuoze.
that was his occupation.

des wart er schiere mære:

of-that became he soon famed:

swenne die burgære

whenever the burghers

an die vînde kâmen,

upon the enemies came,

swelhen schaden sî dâ nâmen,

whatewer harm they there took,

1980

sô vergie in selten daz

so passed for-them seldom that

ern getæte ie ettewaz

he-not did ever something

dâ von er wart ze schalle

there from he became to renown

und ze prîse für sî alle.

and to praise before them all.

Daz treip er unz ûf die stunde

That practiced he until to the hour

1985

daz er wesen kunde

that he be could

ritter swie man gerte,

knight as one desired,

ze sper und ze swerte.

with spear and with sword.

als er die kunst vil gar bevant

when he the art very wholly mastered

tägelîchen mit der hant,

daily with the hand,

1990

und er benamen weste

and he assuredly knew

daz er wære der beste

that he were the best

(er hete ellen unde kraft

(he had valor and strength

und ganze kunst ze ritterschaft),

and whole art in knighthood),

1995 dô êrste wart sîn vrävele grôz.

then first became his boldness great.

wie lützel in der nôt verdrôz!

how little him the distress irked!

er was der viende hagel,

he was the enemies' hail,

an jagen ein houbt, an fluht ein zagel.

in pursuit a head, in flight a tail.

Nu was der Rômære

Now was the Roman

2000 von sîner manheit mære,

for his manhood famed,

der herzoge der in daz lant

the duke who to-them the land

hâte verheret und verbrant,

had ravaged and burned,

vil sterker denne ein ander man.

very stronger than an other man.

ouch was dem selben dar an

also was for-the same there in

sô schône gelungen

so finely succeeded

2005

daz er mit gemeiner zungen

that he with common tongue

ze dem besten ritter wart genant

as the best knight was named

über älliū diu lant.

over all the lands.

nu was daz sîn gewonheit

now was that his custom

daz er eine dicke reit

that he alone often rode

2010

durch justieren für daz tor.

for jousting before the gate.

dâ tet erz ritterlîchen vor:

there did he-it knightly foremost:

wan swelch ritter guot

for whatever knight good

durch sînen ritterlîchen muot

through his knightly spirit

her ûz justierte wider in,

hither out jousted against him,

2015

den fuort er ie gevangen hin

him led he ever captive away

ze der burgære gesihtē

before the burghers' sight

und envorhte sî ze nihte.

and feared them at nothing.

des het er alsô vil getriben

of-that had he so much practiced

2020 daz in nu niemen was beliben

that to-him now no-one was remained

der in bestüende mêre:

who him should-take-on more:

doch versuochte erz dicke sêre.

yet tried he-it often sorely.

The Duke Taken

XII

Ashamed that one man holds the city at bay, Gregorius resolves to stake his life, as a gambler stakes his poor purse against a rich game. He rides alone to the duke's tent and lures him toward the gate. They break their lances and fight on with swords until Gregorius seizes the duke's bridle and drags him toward the city. A fierce battle follows at the gate, but Gregorius keeps his prisoner. The duke restores everything he took and swears peace.

Nu erschamte sich Grêgôrjus,

Now was-ashamed himself Gregorius,

daz in ein man alsus

that them one man thus

2025 het geleit ein michel her

had laid a great army

âne aller slahte wer.

without of-any kind defense.

dô gedâhte er ofte dar an:

then thought he often there on:

‘nu sihe ich dicke daz ein man

‘now see I often that a man

der zabel sêre minnet,

who backgammon sorely loves,

swenn er daz guot gewinnet

when he the goods gains

2030

daz er ûf zabel wâgen wil,

which he on backgammon stake will,

vindet er danne ein glîchez spil,

(if)-finds he then an even game,

sô dunket er sich harte rîch:

so seems he to-himself very rich:

und istz ouch ein teil ungelîch,

and (if)-is-it also a part uneven,

er bestêtz ûf einen guoten val.

he undertakes-it on a good throw.

2035

nu hân ich eines spiles wal,

now have I of-a game choice,

bin et ich sô wol gemuot

(if)-am only I so well minded

daz ich mîn vil armez guot

that I my very poor goods

wâge wider sô rîche habe,

stake against so rich property,

daz ich iemer dar abe

that I ever there from

2040

geêret und gerîchet bin,

honored and enriched am,

ob mir gevallet der gewin.

if to-me falls the winning.

Ich bin ein ungelopter man,

I am an unpraised man,

und verzagte noch nie dar an,

and lost-heart yet never there of,

ichn gedenke dar nâch alle tage,

I think there after all days,

2045

wie ich die sælde bejage

how I the fortune may-win

daz ich ze vollem lobe gestê:

that I to full praise stand:

nu enweiz ich niht wie daz ergê:

now know I not how that goes:

ichn wâge drumbe den lîp,

unless-I stake there-for the life,

2050 man hât mich immer für ein wîp,

one holds me ever for a woman,

und bin der êren betrogen.

and am of-the honor cheated.

mag ich nu disen herzogen

may I now this duke

ûf gotes genâde bestân?

on God's grace take-on?

nu weiz ich doch wol daz ich hân

now know I yet well that I have

2055 beidiu sterke und den muot.

both strength and the spirit.

ich wil benamen diz arme guot

I will assuredly this poor goods

wâgen ûf disem spil.

stake on this game.

man klaget mich niht ze vil,

one laments me not too much,

ob ich von im tôt gelige:

if I from him dead lie:

2060 ist aber daz ich im an gesige,

(if)-is however that I him over prevail,

sô bin ich êren rîche

so am I in-honor rich

iemer êwecliche.

ever eternally.

daz wizze man unde wîp,
that know man and woman,

mir ist lieber daz mîn lîp
to-me is dearer that my life

bescheidenlîche ein ende gebe
honorably an end give

dan daz ich lasterlîchen lebe.⁷
than that I disgracefully live.'

Grêgôrjus sich des gar bewac
Gregorius himself of-that wholly resolved

daz er ez deheinen tac
that he it no day

wolde vristen mêre:
would delay more:

durch got und durch êre
for God and for honor

wold er verliesen sînen lîp
would he lose his life

ode daz unschuldige wîp
or the innocent woman

læsen von des herren hant
free from the lord's hand

der ir genomen hâte ir lant.
who from-her taken had her land.

diz sagt er niewan einem man
this told he only one man

der im mohte wol dar an
who to-him could well there in

gefrumen und gewerren,
profit and binder,

dem oberisten herren:
the highest lord:

er wolde ez nieman mê sagen.
he would it to-no-one more tell.

2065

2070

2075

2080 morgen do ez begunde tagen,
morning when it began to-dawn,
 dô hôrt er eine messe vruo,
then heard he a mass early,
 und bereite sich dar zuo
and readied himself there for
 als er ze velde wolde komen.
as he to field would come.
 der wirt wart zuo der rede genomen:
the host was to the matter taken:

2085 der half im ûz für die stat.
he helped him out before the city.
 mit grôzem vlîze er in des bat
with great diligence he him of-that asked
 daz er des war nâme,
that he of-that heed should-take,
 swenne er wider kâme,
whenever he back should-come,
 daz er in lieze wider in,
that he him should-let back in,

2090 er brâhte flust ode gewin.
he should-bring loss or gain.

Alsus kom der guote
Thus came the good-one

mit manlîchem muote
with manly spirit

geriten über jenez velt
ridden over yonder field

für des herzogen gezelt,
before the duke's tent,

2095 da er in inne weste.
where he him inside knew.

nu ersahen der muotveste,
now saw-him the steadfast-one,

unde wâfente sich sâ
and armed himself straightway

unde ouch niemen mêre dâ.
and also no-one more there.

alle dier dâ hâte
all whom-be there had

die ruoften daz man drâte
they called that one quickly

2100

im sîn ors gewünne:
for-him his horse should-get:

er vorhte daz erm entrünne.
he feared that be-from-him should-escape.

Als in Grêgôrjus komen sach,
When him Gregorius come saw,

vil sinneclîchen im geschach.
very cleverly for-him befell.

er begunde im entwîchen
he began from-him to-retreat

2105

vil harte kârclichen
very greatly craftily

zuo den sînen für daz tor.
toward the his-(people) before the gate.

vil wol erbeitte er sîn dâ vor,
very well waited he for-him there before,

ob ern bekumben möhte,
if be-him hinder could,

daz im niene töhte
that to-him not-at-all should-avail

2110

diu hilfe von sînem her.
the help from his army.

nu saz diu burcmûr und diu wer
now sat the castle-wall and the defense

vol ritter unde vrouwen,
full-of knights and ladies,

die daz wolden schouwen

who that would behold

2115 wederm dâ gelunge.

to-which-of-them there should-succeed.

nune sûmte sich niht der junge.

now delayed himself not the young-one.

Ir ietwederre sich dâ vleiz

Of-them each himself there exerted

ûf einen langen puneiz.

for a long charge.

zuo ein ander wart in ger.

to one another was to-them desire.

2120 alse schiere sî diu sper

as soon they the spears

under die arme sluogen,

under the arms struck,

diu ros si zesamene truogen.

the horses them together carried.

diu sper wâren kurz und grôz;

the spears were short and great;

des ir ietwederre missenôz:

of-that of-them each profited-ill:

2125 wande ir ietwederre stach

for of-them each thrust

daz sîn, daz ez ze stücken brach,

the his-(spear), so-that it to pieces broke,

und daz sî doch gesâzen.

and that they yet stayed-seated.

wie lützel sî vergâzen

how little they forgot

der swerte bî der sîten!

the swords by the side!

seht hie begunden strîten

look here began to-fight

zwêne gelîche starke man,

two equally strong men,

der dewederre nie gewan

of-whom neither ever had

unredelîche zageheit

unseemly cowardice

(daz sî iu für wâr geseit)

(that he to-you for true said)

alse grôz als umbe ein hâr,

as great as about a hair,

unde ez muoste dâ für wâr

and it had-to there for true

den strît under in beiden

the fight between them both

kunst und gelücke scheiden.

art and luck decide.

Dô ir ietwederre genuoc

When of-them each enough

mit dem swerte gesluoc,

with the sword struck,

dô bekumbert in alsus

then hindered him thus

der getühtige Grêgôrjus

the able Gregorius

daz er in zoumen began,

that he him to-bridle began,

und fuort in mit gewalte dan

and led him with force away

vaste gegen dem bûrgetor.

hard toward the city-gate.

daz was im noch beslozen vor,

that was to-him still locked before,

2130

2135

2140

2145

und enwart niht drâte in verlân.

and was not quickly to-him opened.

nu hâte des war getân

now had of-that heed taken

des herzogen ritterschaft.

the duke's knighthood.

2150 diu begunde mit aller ir kraft

it began with all its strength

gegen ir herren gâhen.

toward its lord to-hasten.

dô daz die burgære sâhen,

when that the burghers saw,

dô wurfen se ûf diu bûrgetor.

then threw they open the city-gate.

alsus ergie dâ vor

thus came-about there before

2155 der allerhertiste strît

the of-all-hardest fight

der vordes ode sît

which before or since

von sô vil liuten ergie.

from so many people came-about.

do behabte Grêgôrjus hie

then kept Gregorius here

sînen gevangen man

his captive man

2160 und brâhte in ritterlîche dan.

and brought him knightly away.

zuo sluogen sî diu bûrgetor.

shut struck they the city-gate.

dô huoben sî dâ vor
then raised they there before

einen sturm harte grôz.
a storm very great.

unlanc was daz sî des verdrôz.
not-long was that them of-it irked.

Der sælige Grêgôrjus
The blessed Gregorius

2165

der bejagte im alsus
he won for-himself thus

des tages michel êre
of-the day great honor

und het von grôzem sêre
and had from great pain

erlæset sîner muoter lant
freed his mother's land

mit sîner ellēthaften hant.
with his valiant hand.

2170

vordes was sîn prîs sô grôz
before was his praise so great

daz niemen frumen des verdrôz
that no valiant-one of-it irked

ern spræche sîn êre;
he should-speak his honor;

nu hât er ir aber mêre.
now has he of-it however more.

ouch hât diu vrouwe und ir lant
also has the lady and her land

2175

von sîner gehülfigen hant
through his helpful hand

alle ir nôt überkomen.
all their distress overcome.

swaz sî schaden hâte genomen,
whatever she harm had taken,

der wart ir vollecliche estat,
it was to-her fully restored,

2180 als sî gebôt unde bat,
as she commanded and asked,

und enphie des rehte sicherheit
and received of-that right surety

daz er ir dehein leit
that he to-her no sorrow

fürdermâl getæte.
henceforth should-do.

daz liez er harte stæte.
that kept he very steadfast.

The Marriage

XIII

Fearing new wars, the lords urge the lady to marry for the land and for heirs, and they leave her the choice. She chooses the knight God sent to free her, who is her own son. They live in great love, and he rules justly and with moderation. But every day he secretly reads his tablet in tears and prays God to forgive his parents, unaware of the sin he now commits with his mother.

2185 Dô diz nœtige lant
When this distressed land

sînen kumber überwant
its affliction overcame

und mit fride stuont als ê,
and with peace stood as before,

nu tet den lantherren wê
now did to-the land-lords woe

diu tægeliche vorhte
the daily fear

2190 die in der zwîvel worhte,
which in-them the doubt wrought,

daz ez in sam müese ergân,
that it to-them likewise might go,

ob sî aber wolde bestân
if them again would attack

dehein gewaltigiu hant.
any mighty hand.

sî sprâchen ez wære daz grôze lant
they said it were the great land

mit einem wîbe unbewart
with a woman unguarded

2195

vor unrehter hôhvert;
against unjust arrogance;

und heten sî einen herren,
and had they a lord,

sone möhte in niht gewerren.
so could them nothing harm.

Nu wurden se alsô drâte
Now became they so quickly

under in ze râte
among themselves at counsel

2200

daz sî die vrouwen bāten,
that they the lady should-ask,

und daz mit vlîze tæten,
and that with diligence should-do,

daz se einen man næme
that she a man should-take

der in ze herren gezæme:
who to-them as lord should-befit:

daz wære in allen enden guot.
that would-be to-them in-all ends good.

2205

sî westen wol, daz sî den muot
they knew well, that she the spirit

ir durch got hæte erkorn
for-herself for God had chosen

daz sî hæte verborn
that she had renounced

und verbern wolde alle man.
and renounce would all men.

2210 dâ missetæte sî an:
there would-sin she in:

ir leben wær übele bewant,
her life would-be ill bestowed,

ob sî ein sô rîchez lant
if she a so rich land

ir dankes âne erben
of-her will without heirs

sus wolde verderben.
thus would ruin.

2215 diz wæren ir ræte,
this were their counsels,

daz sî noch baz tæte
that she yet better should-do

wider die werlt und wider got
toward the world and toward God

(si behielte sô baz sîn gebot),
(she would-keep so better his commandment),

daz si einen man næme
that she a man should-take

2220 und erben bekæme.
and heirs should-get.

diz was benamen der beste rât:
this was assuredly the best counsel:

wande êlich hîrât

for lawful marriage

daz ist daz aller beste leben

that is the of-all best life

daz got der werlde hât gegeben.

which God to-the world has given.

Dô ir der rehten wârheit

When to-her of-the right truth

2225

alsô vil wart für geleit,

so much was before laid,

sî volgte ir râte und ir bete

she followed their counsel and their request

alsô daz sîz in gote tete,

so that she-it in God did,

und gelopte ze nemen einen man.

and promised to take a man.

dâ geschach ir aller wille an.

there befell their all will in.

2230

nu rieten sî über al

now counseled they over all

daz man ir lieze die wal

that one to-her should-leave the choice

ze nemen swen sî wolde.

to take whomever she would.

dô daz wesen solde,

when that be should,

- 2235 dô gedâhte diu guote
then thought the good-one
 vil dicke in ir muote
very often in her spirit
 wen sî nemen möhte
whom she take might
 der baz ir muote töhte
who better to-her spirit should-suit
 danne den selben man
than the same man
- 2240 (und geviel vil gar dar an)
(and pleased very wholly there in)
 den ir got hete gesant
whom to-her God had sent
 ze læsen sî unde ir lant.
to free her and her land.
 daz was ir sun Grêgôrjus.
that was her son Gregorius.
 dar nâch wart er alsus
there after became he thus
- 2245 vil schiere sîner muoter man.
very soon his mother's man.
 da ergie des tiuvels wille an.
there came-about the devil's will in.
 Dô sî den herren sagte
When she to-the lords told
 wer ir dar zuo behagte,
who to-her there for pleased,
 nu wâren sî niemens alsô vrô:
now were they of-no-one so glad:
- 2250 ze herren nâmen sî in dô.
as lord took they him then.

ez enwart nie wünne merre
there was never delight greater

dan diu vrouwe und der herre
than the lady and the lord

mit ein ander hâten:
with one another had:

wan sî wâren berâten
for they were provided

mit liebe in grôzen triuwen:
with love in great faithfulness: 2255

seht, daz ergie mit riuwen.
look, that came-about with rue.

er was guot rihtære,
he was good judge,

von sîner milte mære:
for his bounty famed:

swaz einem manne mac gegeben
whatever to-a man can give

ze der werlte ein wünneclichez leben,
in the world a delightful life, 2260

des hât er gar des wunsches wal:
of-that has he wholly of-the ideal choice:

daz nam einen gæhen val.
that took a sudden fall.

Sîn lant und sîne marke
His land and his march

die befridet er alsô starke,
those pacified he so strongly,

swer sî mit arge ruorte
whoever them with evil touched 2265

daz er den zefuorte
that he him destroyed

der êren und des guotes.
of-the honor and of-the goods.

er was vestes muotes:

he was of-firm spirit:

enhæt erz niht durch got verlân,

had he-it not for God left,

2270 im müesen wesen undertân

to-him must be subject

swaz in der lande was gelegen.

whatever to-them of-the lands was placed.

nu wolde aber er der mâze pflegen:

now would however be of-the measure take-care:

durch die gotes êre

for the God's honor

sone gerte er nihtes mêre

so desired he of-nothing more

2275 wan daz im dienen solde:

but what to-him serve should:

fürbaz er niene wolde.

further he not-at-all would.

Die tavel hât er alle wege

The tablet has he all ways

in sîner heimlichen pflege

in his secret care

verborgen ûf sîner veste,

hidden up-in his fortress,

2280 dâ die niemen weste,

where it no-one knew,

diu dâ bî im funden was;

which there by him found was;

an der er tægelichen las

on which he daily read

sîne sündeliche sache

his sinful matter

den ougen zungemache,

to-the eyes to-discomfort,

wie er geboren würde,

how he born should-be,

2285

und die süntliche bürde

and the sinful burden

sîner muoter und sînes vater.

of-his mother and of-his father.

unsern herren got bater

our lord God prayed-be

in beiden umbe hulde,

for-them both for favor,

unde erkande niht der schulde

and recognized not the guilt

2290

diu ûf sîn selbes rücke lac,

which upon his own back lay,

die er naht unde tac

which he night and day

mit sîner muoter uobte,

with his mother practiced,

dâ mit er got betruobte.

there with he God grieved.

The Maid Who Watched

XIV

A maid who keeps the chamber notices that the lord goes into it cheerful every day and comes out red-eyed. She hides, sees him weep and pray over a tablet, and tells her lady, who at first rebukes her. While he is out hunting, the lady goes to the hiding place on the maid's counsel, recognizes the tablet she laid with her child, and falls into despair. She holds only to the hope that whoever found her son sold the tablet to her husband, and she sends for him.

- 2295 Nu was dâ ze hove ein magt,
Now was there at court a maid,
alsô karc, sô man sagt,
so crafty, as one says,
diu verstuont sich sîner klage wol,
who understood herself of-his lament well,
als ich iu nu sagen sol;
as I to-you now tell shall;
wan sî der kemenâten pflac,
for she of-the chamber took-care,
2300 dâ diu tavel inne lac.
where the tablet inside lay.
er het genomen ze sîner klage
he had taken for his lament
ie eine zît in dem tage,
ever a time in the day,
die er niemer versaz.
which he never missed.
nu gemarhte diu juncvrouwe daz,
now marked the young-lady that,
2305 swenne si in dar in verlie,
whenever she him there in let,
daz er dar lachende gie,
that he there laughing went,

und schiet ie als ein riuwec man
and parted ever as a rueful man

mit rôten ougen dan.
with red eyes away.

Nu vleiz si sich iemer mêre
Now strove she herself ever more

herzelîchen sêre
heartily sorely

2310

wie sî daz rehte ersæhe
how she that rightly should-see

wâ von diu klage geschæhe,
where from the lament should-happen,

und sleich im eines tages mite,
and crept him one day with,

dô er aber nâch sînem site
when he again after his custom

ze kemenâten klagen gie.
to chamber to-lament went.

2315

dô was diu juncvrouwe hie
then was the young-lady here

und barc sich unz daz sî gesach
and bid herself until that she saw

sînen klâgelîchen ungemach,
his lamentable discomfort,

und daz er an der tavel las,
and that he on the tablet read,

als sîn gewonheit was.
as his custom was.

2320

dô er des harte vil getete
when he of-that very much did

mit weinen unde mit gebete,
with weeping and with prayer,

dô truckent er diu ougen

then dried he the eyes

und wânde sîniu tougen

and thought his secrets

2325 vor al der werlt wol bewarn.

before all the world well to-keep.

nu hetez diu magt alsus ervarn.

now had-it the maid thus found-out.

war er die tavel leite,

where he the tablet laid,

daz ersach sî vil gereite.

that saw she very readily.

Dô sîn klage ein ende nam,

When his lament an end took,

2330 diu maget vil harte schiere kam

the maid very greatly soon came

zuo der vrouwen unde sprach

to the lady and said

‘vrouwe, waz ist der ungemach

‘lady, what is the discomfort

dâ von mîn herre trûret sô,

from which my lord mourns so,

daz ir mit im niht sît unfrô?’

that you with him not are unglad?’

2335 diu vrouwe sprach ‘waz meinest du?

the lady said ‘what meanest thou?’

jâ schiet er niuwelîchen nu

indeed parted he newly now

von uns vil vroelîchen hie:

from us very gladly here:

waz möhte er, sît er von mir gie,

what could he, since he from me went,

vernomen hân der mære

heard have of-the tidings

dâ von er trûrec wære?

from which he sad were?

2340

wære im solhes iht gesaget,

were to-him such at-all said,

dazn hete er mich niht verdaget.

that would-have he from-me not concealed.

im enist ze weinen niht geschehen:

to-him has to weep nothing happened:

du hâst entriuwen missesehen.'

thou hast in-truth seen-amiss.'

'vrouwe, leider ich enhân.

'lady, alas I have-not.

2345

dêswâr ich sach in hiute stân

truly I saw him today stand

dâ in ein riuwe gevie

where him a rue seized

diu mir an mîn herze gie.'

which to-me to my heart went.'

'Sich, jâ was ez ie dîn site,

'Look, indeed was it ever thy custom,

unde hâst mir dâ mite

and hast for-me there with

2350

gemachet manege swære,

made many-a grief,

dun gesagtest nie guot mære.

thou saidst never good tidings.

noch baz du gedagetest

still better thou shouldst-be-silent

dan du die lüge sagetest

than thou the lie shouldst-tell

diu mir ze schaden gezüge.'

which to-me to harm should-tend.'

2355

'vrouwe, diz ist niht ein lüge.

'lady, this is not a lie.

jane ist niht anders mîn klage

indeed is not other my lament

wan daz ich iu sô wâr sage.'

but that I to-you so truly tell.'

'sich, sô meinest duz doch sô?'

'look, so meanest thou-it indeed so?'

2360 'entriuwen jâ, er ist unvrô.

'in-truth yes, he is unglad.

ich wânde ir westetz michel baz.

I thought you knew-it much better.

jâ vrouwe, waz mac wesen daz

indeed lady, what may be that

daz er vor iu sô gar verstilt,

that he before you so wholly conceals,

wan er iuch anders niht enhilt?

for he from-you otherwise nothing hides?

2365 zewâre, vrouwe, swaz ez sî,

truly, lady, whatever it be,

im wont ein grôziu swære bî.

to-him dwells a great grief by.

ich hân es ouch mê war genomen:

I have of-it also more heed taken:

nu bin ichs an ein ende komen,

now am I-of-it to an end come,

daz er sô grôzen kumber treit,

that he so great affliction bears,

2370 den er noch niemen hât geseit.

whiche he still to-no-one has told.

Sît er dises landes phlac,
Since he of-this land took-care,
 sone lie er nie deheinen tac
so let he never any day
 ern gienge ie wider morgen
unless-he went ever toward morning
 eine und verborgen
alone and bidden
 in die kemenâten,
into the chamber,
 fröude wol berâten:
with-joy well provided:
 swie vroelîch er dar in gie,
however gladly he there in went,
 sô schiet er doch ze jungest ie
so parted he yet at last ever
 her ûz vil harte riuwevar.
hither out very greatly rue-colored.
 doch genam ichs nie sô rehte war
yet took I-of-it never so rightly heed
 als ich hiute hân getân.
as I today have done.
 dô ich in sach dar in gân,
when I him saw there in go,
 dô stal ich mich mit im dar in
then stole I myself with him there in
 und barc mich dâ unz daz ich in
and bid myself there until that I him
 und alle sîne gebærde ersach.
and all his bearing saw.

2375

2380

2385

ich sach in grôzen ungemach

I saw him great discomfort

von unmanlicher klage begân

of unmanly lament make

unde vor ime hân

and before him have

ein dinc daran geschriben was:

a thing thereon written was:

2390 dô er daz sach unde las,

when he that saw and read,

sô sluog er sich zen brüsten ie,

so struck he himself on-the breasts ever,

und bôt sich an sîniu knie

and offered himself on his knees

mit venjen vil dicke,

with prostrations very often,

mit manegem ûfblicke.

with many-a upward-glance.

2395 ich gesach nie man mêre

I saw never man more

geweinen alsô sêre.

weep so sorely.

dâ bî erkande ich harte wol

there by recognized I very well

daz sîn herze ist leides vol:

that his heart is of-sorrow full:

wan dâ enzwîvel ich niht an

for there doubt I not of

2400 umb einen sô geherzen man,

about a so great-hearted man,

swâ dem ze weinen geschiht,

wherever to-him to weep befalls,

daz ist âne herzeriuwe niht,

that is without heart-rue not,

als ich in hiute weinen sach.'

as I him today weep saw.'

diu vrouwe trûreclîchen sprach

the lady mournfully spoke

'Ouwê mîns lieben herren!

'Alas for-my dear lord!

2405

waz mac im danne werren?

what can him then trouble?

mirst sînes kumbers niht mê kunt.

to-me-is of-his affliction nothing more known.

wan er ist junc und gesunt

for he is young and sound

und rîch ze guoter mâze;

and rich in good measure;

dar zuo ich niene lâze

there to I not-at-all fail

2410

ich vâre sîns willen als ich sol.

I strive-for his will as I should.

dêswâr des mac mich lûsten wol,

truly of-that may me please well,

wand er daz wol verschulden kan.

for he that well deserve can.

gewan ie wîp tiurern man,

(if)-got ever woman dearer man,

dêswâr daz lâze ich âne zorn:

truly that leave I without anger:

2415

wand er wart weizgot nie geborn.

for he was God-knows never born.

ouwê mir armen wîbe!

alas me poor woman!

jane geschach mînem lîbe

indeed befell to-my person

nie deheiner slahte guot,

never of-any kind good,

- 2420 unde ouch niemer getuot,
and also never does,
 niewan von sîn eines tugent.
except from his alone virtue.
 nu waz mag im ze sîner jugent
now what may to-him in his youth
 sô vil ze weinen sîn geschehen
so much to weep be happened
 als ich dich dâ hœre jehen?
as I thee there hear say?
- 2425 nu tuo mir ettelîchen rât,
now do for-me some counsel,
 sît daz er michz verswigen hât,
since that he from-me-it concealed has,
 wie ich sîn leit ervar
how I his sorrow find-out
 daz ich mich doch an im bewar.
that I myself yet with him keep.
 ich fürhte, ob ich mirz sagen bite,
I fear, if I me-it tell ask,
- 2430 ich verliese in dâ mite.
I lose him there with.
 ich weiz wol, swelch sache
I know well, whatever matter
 im ze leide od ze ungemache
to-him to sorrow or to discomfort
 geschæhe diu ze sagen ist
should-befall which to tell is
 dien verswige er mich deheine vrist.
that would-conceal he from-me no time.
- 2435 nune ger ich doch deheineḡ geschiht
now desire I yet no happening
 wider sînen willē ze wizzen niht,
against his will to know at-all,

wan daz mir diz durch einen list
except that for-me this for a reason

alsô nôt ze wizzen ist,
so needful to know is,

ob sîner swære
whether of-his grief

iender alsô wære
anywhere so were

2440

daz im mîn helfe töhte
that to-him my help should-avail

und im sî benemen möhte.
and from-him it take might.

daz er mich ie deheineḡ geschiht,
that he from-me ever any happening,

sî züḡe ze fröuden ode niht,
it should-tend to joys or not,

verswige, des was ich ungewon,
should-conceal, of-that was I unaccustomed,

2445

und bin wol gewis dâ von
and am well certain there from

daz er mir diz ungerne saget.
that he to-me this unwillingly tells.'

‘nu râte ich iu wol,’ sprach diu maget,
‘now counsel I you well,’ said the maid,

‘daz ir ez harte wol ervart
‘that you it very well find-out

und doch sîne hulde bewart.
and yet his favor keep.

2450

dâ ich in dâ stênde sach
where I him there standing saw

klagende sînen ungemach,
lamenting his discomfort,

die stat marhte ich harte wol,
the place marked I very well,

als ich sî iu zeigen sol.

as I it to-you show shall.

2455 dô er geweinde genuoc

when he wept enough

und sich zen brüsten gesluoc,

and himself on-the breasts struck,

daz er dâ vor im hâte

what he there before him had

daz barc er alsô drâte

that bid he so quickly

in ein mûrloch über sich.

into a wall-hole above himself

2460 die selben stat die marht ich.

the same place that marked I.

muget ir des erbîten

(if)-can you of-that wait

(er wil doch birsen rîten),

(he will indeed hunting ride),

vrouwe, sô füere ich iuch dar

lady, so lead I you there

und zeige ez iu: sô nemet ir war

and show it to-you: so take you heed

2465 waz dar an geschriben sî:

what there on written be:

dâ erkennet ir ez bî.

there recognize you it by.

ez enist niht âne daz,

it is not without that,

dar an enstê ettewaz

there on stands something

geschriben von sînen sorgen

written of his cares

2470 die er sus hât verborgen.'

which he thus has hidden.'

Dô er nâch sîner gewonheit

When he after his custom

ze walde bîrsen gereit,

to forest hunting rode,

dô tet sî alsô drâte

then did she so quickly

nâch der mælde râte

according-to the maid's counsel

und gie dâ sî die tavel vant,

and went where she the tablet found,

2475

unde erkande sî zehant,

and recognized it at-once,

daz ez diu selbe wære,

that it the same were,

als man iu an dem mære

as one to-you in the tale

ouch dâ vor seite,

also there before told,

die sî zir kinde leite.

which she to-her child laid.

2480

unde als sî dar an gelas

and when she there on read

daz sî aber versenket was

that she again sunk was

in den vil tiefen ünden

in the very deep waves

tœtlicher sünden,

of-deadly sins,

dô dûhte sî sich unsælic gnuoc.

then seemed she to-herself unblessed enough.

2485

zuo den brüsten sî sich sluoc

on the breasts she herself struck

und brach ûz ir schoene hâr.

and tore out her fair hair.

si gedâhte daz sî für wâr
she thought that she for true

zuo der helle wære geborn,
to the hell were born,

2490 und got hæte verkorn
and God had rejected

ir herzenlîchez riuwen
her heartfelt rueing

daz sî begienc mit triuwen
which she practiced with faithfulness

umbe ir erren missetât,
for her former misdeed,

als man iu ê gesaget hât,
as one to-you before said has,

2495 sît er des tiuvels râte
since he the devil's counsel

nu aber verhenget hâte
now again permitted had

daz sî an der sünden grunt
that she into the sins' ground

was gevallen anderstunt.
was fallen a-second-time.

Ir vröuden sunne wart bedaht
Her joy's sun became covered

2500 mit tôtvinsterre naht.
with death-dark night.

ich wæne ir herze wære
I think her heart would-have-been

gebrochen von der swære,
broken from the grief,

wan daz ein kurz gedinge
but that a short hope

ir muot tete ringe,
her spirit made light,

und stuont ir trôst doch gar dar an.
and stood her comfort yet wholly there on.

2505

si gedâhte 'waz ob mînem man
she thought 'what if to-my man

disiu tavel ist zuo brâht
this tablet is to brought

anders danne ich hân gedâht?
otherwise than I have thought?

ob got mînen sun gesande
if God my son sent

gesunden ze lande,
sound to land,

2510

ettewer der in dâ vant
someone who him there found

der hât die tavel und daz gewant
he has the tablet and the clothing

mînem herren ze koufen geben.
to-my lord to buy given.

des gedingen wil ich leben,
in-that hope will I live,

unz ich die rede rehte ervar.'
until I the matter rightly find-out.'

2515

ein bote wart gewonnen dar,
a messenger was gotten there,

und besande alsô balde
and summoned so quickly

ir herren dâ ze walde.
her lord there in forest.

Mother and Wife

XV

Gregorius hurries home and finds his wife deathly pale. When she asks where he was born, he insists he is a duke's son, but she shows him the tablet: she is his mother and his wife. Gregorius rages against God, and Hartmann compares their grief to that of Judas and David. She asks whether any penance can save her. He forbids despair, since true remorse atones for any sin, tells her to stay and give to the poor, and leaves in beggar's clothes.

Der bote gâhte dô zehant

The messenger hastened then at-once

2520 dâ er sînen herren vant.

where he his lord found.

zuo dem sprach er alsus

to him spoke he thus

'herzoge Grêgôrjus,

'duke Gregorius,

ob ir iemer mîne vrouwen

if you ever my lady

lebende welt beschouwen,

living will behold,

2525 sô geseht sî vil drâte,

so see her very quickly,

ode ir komet ze spâte.

or you come too late.

ich lie se in grôzer ungehabe.'

I left her in great distress.'

nu wart Grêgôrjus dar abe

now became Gregorius there from

vil harte riuwec unde unvrô.

very greatly rueful and unglad.

2530 er sprach 'gesellê, wie redest du sô?

he said 'comrade, how speakest thou so?

jâ liez ich sî an dirre stunt

indeed left I her at this hour

vil harte vrô und wol gesunt.'

very greatly glad and well sound.'

'herre, des wil ouch ich jehen.

'lord, of-that will also I say.

ja ist ez an dirre stunt geschehen.'

indeed is it in this hour happened.'

Ze walde wart niht mê gebiten:

In forest was not more waited:

2535

vil balde sî ze hûse riten.

very quickly they to house rode.

dane wart (des wil ich iu verpflegen)

there was (of-that will I you assure)

niht vil erbeizet under wegen,

not much dismounted on-the way,

unz daz er vol hin kam

until that he fully thither came

dâ sîn vröude ein ende nam.

where his joy an end took.

2540

wande er muose schouwen

for he had-to behold

an sîner lieben vrouwen

in his dear lady

ein swære ougenweide.

a heavy eye-pasture.

ir hiufeln was vor leide

from-her cheeks was for sorrow

diu rôsenvarwe entwichen,

the rose-color departed,

2545

diu schœne varwe erblichen:

the fair color faded:

sus vant er sî tâtvar.

thus found he her death-pale.

des entweich ouch im sîn vröude gar.
of-that departed also from-him his joy wholly.

vil grôz jâmer dâ ergie:
very great misery there came-about:

2550 wande zwei gelieber nie
for two more-loved never

mannes ouge gesach.
man's eye saw.

der guote sündære sprach
the good sinner said

‘vrouwe, wie gehabet ir iuch sô?’
‘lady, how bear you yourself so?’

vil kûmę gantwurte sî im dô,
very barely answered she him then,

2555 wand ir der sûft die sprâche brach.
for her the sigh the speech broke.

mit halben worten sî sprach
with half words she spoke

‘Herre, ich mac wol riuwec sîn.’
‘Lord, I may well rueful be.’

‘waz wirrēt iu, liebiu vrouwe mîn?’
‘what troubles you, dear lady mine?’

‘herre, des ist alsô vil
‘lord, of-that is so much

2560 daz ich ez gote klagen wil
that I it to-God lament will

daz ich ie ze der werlt kam:
that I ever into the world came.

wan mir ist diu Sælde gram.
for to-me is the Fortune hostile.

verfluochet was diu stunde
cursed was the hour

von unsers herren munde,
by our lord's mouth,

dâ ich inne wart geborn.

where I in was born.

2565

Unsælde hât ûf mich gesworn

Misfortune has upon me sworn

und behaltet vaste an mir den eit;

and keeps firmly on me the oath;

wan mir ie tûsent herzenleit

for to-me ever a-thousand heart-sorrows

wider eime liebe sint geschehen.

against one joy are happened.

herre, ir sult mir des verjehen

lord, you shall to-me of-that declare

2570

von wannen ir geborn sît.

from where you born are.

ez wære ê gewesen zît

it would-be before been time

der frâge die ich nu begân:

for-the question which I now pursue:

ich wæne ich sî verspætet hân.'

I think I it delayed have.'

'vrouwe, ich weiz wol waz ir klaget:

'lady, I know well what you lament:

2575

iu hât etewer gesaget

to-you has someone said

daz ich niht sî ein edel man.

that I not am a noble man.

weste ich wer iuch dar an

should-know I who you there in

alsus geleidet hæte,

thus grieved had,

ez gelægen mîne ræte

it would-lie-still my counsels

2580

niemer unz ûf sînen tût;

never until to his death;

nu hel sich wol, des ist im nôt.
now let-him-hide himself well, of-that is to-him need.

swer er ist, er hât gelogen:
whoever he is, he has lied:

ich bin von einem herzogen
I am of a duke

2585 vil endelîche geborn.
very truly born.

ir sult mir volgen âne zorn,
you shall me follow without anger,

daz wir der rede hie gedagen:
that we of-the matter here keep-silent:

ich enkan iu fürbaz niht gesagen.'
I can to-you further not tell.'

Sus antwurte im diu vrouwe dô.
Thus answered him the lady then.

2590 'der rede enist niht, herre, alsô.
'the matter is not, lord, so.

jâne sæhe ich den man
indeed would-look I the man

weizgot nimmer lachend an,
God-knows never laughing at,

der mir von iu sagte
who to-me of you said

daz iu niht behagte:
what to-you not pleased:

2595 ern funde hie niht guot antwurt.
he would-find here not good answer.

jâ fürhte ich, iuwer geburt
indeed fear I, your birth

diu sî mir alze genôzsam.'
it be to-me all-too equal.'

die tavel sî her für nam,
the tablet she here forth took,

sî sprach 'sît ir der man

she said 'are you the man

(dâne helt mich niht an)

(there bide from-me nothing of)

von dem hie an geschriben stât?

of whom here on written stands?

sô hât uns des tiuvels rât

so has us the devil's counsel

versenket sêle unde lîp!

sunk soul and body!

ich bin iuwer muoter und iuwer wîp.

I am your mother and your woman.'

Nu sprechet wie dâ wære

Now say how there were

dem guoten sündære.

for-the good sinner.

er was in leides gebote.

he was in sorrow's command.

sînen zorn huob er hin ze gote,

his anger raised he thither to God,

er sprach 'diz ist des ich ie bat,

he said 'this is what I ever prayed,

daz mich got bræhte ûf die stat

that me God should-bring to the place

daz mir sô wol geschæhe

that to-me so well should-happen

daz ich mit vrôuden sæhe

that I with joys should-see

mîne liebe muoter.

my dear mother.

rîcher got vil guoter,

mighty God very good,

2600

2605

2610

2615 des hâst du anders mich gewert
of-that hast thou otherwise me granted

danne ichs an dich hân gegert.
than I-it of thee have desired.

ich gertes in mînem muote
I desired-it in my spirit

nâch liebe und nâch guote:
after love and after good:

nu hân ich sî gesehen sô
now have I her seen so

2620 daz ich des nimmer wurde vrô,
that I of-that never become glad,

wand ich sî baz verbære
for I her better would-do-without

denn ich ir sus heimlich wære.
than I to-her thus intimate were.'

Ich weiz wol daz Jûdas
I know well that Judas

niht riuwiger was
not more-rueful was

2625 dô er sich vor leide hie,
when he himself for sorrow banded,

danne diu zwei hie.
than the two here.

ouch entrûrte Dâvît

also mourned David

nihtes mêre zuo der zît

of-nothing more at the time

dô im kômen mære

when to-him came tidings

daz erslagen wære

that slain were

2630

Saul unde Jônathas

Saul and Jonathan

und Absalôn, der dâ was

and Absalom, who there was

sîn sun, der schœniste man

his son, the fairest man

den wîp ie ze sun gewan.

whom woman ever as son got.

Swer ir jâmer unde ir klagen

Whoever their misery and their lament

2635

vol an ein ende solde sagen,

fully to an end should tell,

der müese wîser sîn dan ich.

he must wiser be than I.

ich wære, ez wære unmügelich

I think, it were impossible

daz ez iu mit einem munde

that it to-you with one mouth

iemer wol gesagen kunde.

anyone well tell could.

2640

sich möhte vil nâch der tût

itself might very nearly the death

gemâzet haben ze dirre nôt:

measured have to this distress:

den hæten sî, wær er in kômen,

him would-have they, were he to-them come,

ze voller wirtschafft genomen.

as full hospitality taken.

2645 in wâren diu beide

to-them were the both

gesat in glîche leide,

set in equal sorrow,

beidiu sêle unde lîp.

both soul and body.

wâ gevriesch ie man ode wîp

where heard ever man or woman

deheiner slahte swære

of-any kind grief

2650 diu alsô gar wære

which so wholly were

âne aller hande trôst?

without all kinds comfort?

diu sêle entsaz den hellerôst:

the soul dreaded the hell's-gridiron:

sô was der lîp in beiden

so was the body in both

bekumbert umbe ir scheiden.

afflicted about their parting.

2655 ez hât geschaffet diu gotes kraft

it has made the God's power

ein missemüetę geselleschaft,

an ill-matched companionship,

diu doch samet belîbe,

which yet together remain,

under sêle und under lîbe.

between soul and between body.

wan swaz dem lîbe samfte tuot,

for whatever to-the body softly does,

2660 dazn ist der sêle dehein guot:

that is to-the soul no good:

swâ mite aber diu sêle ist genesen,
where with however the soul is saved,

daz muoz des lîbes kumber wesen.
that must the body's affliction be.

nu liten sî beidenthalben nôt:
now suffered they on-both-sides distress:

daz was ein zwivaltiger tôt.
that was a twofold death.

Diu vrouwe ûz grôzem jâmer sprach,
The lady out-of great misery spoke,

2665

wan sî den jâmer ane sach
for she the misery at looked

‘ouwê ich verfluochtez wîp!
‘alas I cursed woman!

jâ kumbert maneger den lîp,
indeed afflicts many-a-one the body,

daz des diu sêle werde vrô:
that of-that the soul may-become glad:

dem geschiht ouch alsô.
to-him happens also so.

2670

sô bewigt sich manec man und wîp
so gives-up himself many-a man and woman

der sêle umbe den lîp,
the soul for the body,

und lebt in dirre werlde wol.
and lives in this world well.

nune mag ich noch ensol
now can I nor should

mînem lîbe niht des gegehen
for-my body not of-that declare

2675

des im ze guote sî geschehen:
which to-it for good be happened:

ist mir diu sêle nu verlorn,
(if)-is to-me the soul now lost,

sô ist der heize gotes zorn

so is the hot God's anger

vil gar ûf mich gevallen,

very wholly upon me fallen,

2680 als den verfluochten allen.

as on-the cursed all.

mich wundert, nâch der missetât

me wonders, after the misdeed

die mir der lîp begangen hât,

which to-me the body committed has,

daz mich diu erdê geruochet tragen.

that me the earth deigns to-bear.

sun herre, muget ir mir sagen

son lord, can you to-me tell

2685 (wan ir habt der buoche vil gelesen),

(for you have of-the books much read),

möht aber dehein buoze wesen

might however any penance be

über sämelîche missetât,

over such misdeed,

ob des nu ist dehein rât

if of-that now is no remedy

(des ich wol muoz getrûwen)

(which I well must trust)

2690 ich enmüezê die helle bûwen,

I unless-must the hell dwell-in,

dâ mite ich doch verschulde daz

there with I yet earn that

daz sî mir doch ettewaz

that it to-me yet somewhat

senfter sî dan maneges leben

gentler be than many-a-one's life

der ouch der helle ist gegeben?’

who also to-the hell is given?’

- 'Muoter', sprach Grêgôrjus, 2695
'Mother', said Gregorius,
- 'gesprechet niemer mêre alsus:
'speak never more thus:
- ez ist wider dem gebote.
it is against the commandment.
- niht verzwîvelt an gote:
not despair of God:
- ir sult vil harte wol genesen.
you shall very greatly well be-saved.
- jâ hân ich einen trôst gelesen, 2700
indeed have I a comfort read,
- daz got die wâren riuwe hât
that God the true rue holds
- ze buoze übeꝛ alle missetât.
as penance over all misdeed.
- iuwer sêle ist nie sô ungesund,
your soul is never so unsound,
- wirt iu daz ouge ze einer stunt
(if)-becomes to-you the eye at one hour
- von herzelîcher riuwe naz, 2705
from heartfelt rue wet,
- ir sît genesen, geloubet daz.
you are saved, believe that.
- belîbet bî iuwer lande.
remain by your land.
- an spîse und an gewande
in food and in clothing
- sult ir dem lîbe entziehen,
shall you from-the body withdraw,
- gemach und vröude fliehen. 2710
comfort and joy flee.

irn sultz sô niht behalten

you shall-it so not keep

daz irs iht wellet walten

that you-it at-all will wield

durch deheine werltliche êre,

for any worldly honor,

niewan daz ir deste mêre

except that you the more

2715 got rihtet mit dem guote.

to-God make-amends with the goods.

jâ tuot ez wirs dem muote,

indeed does it worse to-the spirit,

der guotes lebens wal hât

who of-good life choice has

und er sich sîn âne begât,

and he himself of-it without goes,

denne ob des enbirt ein man

than if of-that does-without a man

2720 des er teil nie gewan.

of-which he share never got.

ir sît ein schuldigez wîp:

you are a guilty woman:

des lâten enkelten den lîp

for-that let pay the body

mit tãgelicher arbeit,

with daily hardship,

sô daz im sî widerseit

so that to-it be refused

2725 des er dâ aller meiste ger:

what it there of-all most desires:

sus habet in, unz er iu wer,

thus hold it, while it you defies,

in der riuwen bande.

in the rue's bonds.

den gelt von iuwerm lande

the revenue from your land

den teilet mit den armen:

that share with the poor:

sô müezet ir got erbarmen.

so must you God move-to-pity.

2730

bestiftet iuwer eigen,

endow your property,

swâ iuwer wîsen zeigen,

wherever your wise-ones show,

mit rîchen klôstern (daz ist guot):

with rich cloisters (that is good):

sus senftet sînen zornegen muot,

thus soften his angry spirit,

den wir sô gar erbelget hân.

which we so wholly angered have.

2735

ich wil im ouch ze buoze stân.

I will to-him also in penance stand.

vrouwe, liebiu muoter mîn,

lady, dear mother mine,

diz sol diu jungest rede sîn

this shall the last speech be

die ich iemer wider iuch getuo.

which I ever toward you make.

wir suln ez bringen darzuo

we shall it bring there-to

2740

daz uns noch got gelîche

that us yet God alike

gesamne in sînem rîche.

gather in his kingdom.

ichn gesihe iuch niemer mê:

I see you never more:

wir wæren baz gescheiden ê.

we would-be better parted before.

- 2745 dem lande und dem guote
to-the land and to-the goods
 und werltlichem muote
and to-worldly spirit
 dem sî hiute widerseit.
to-that be today renounced.'
 hin tet er diu rîchen kleit
off put he the rich clothes
 und schiet sich von dem lande
and parted himself from the land
 2750 mit dürftigen gewande.
with beggarly clothing.

The Fisherman by the Lake

XVI

Gregorius wanders fasting into the wilderness for three days, seeking a place of penance, and comes to a fisherman's hut by a lake. The fisherman mocks him as a well-fed fraud and turns him out, and Gregorius accepts the insult gladly. The fisherman's wife pities him, persuades her husband, and calls him back. He takes only oat bread and spring water, and when the fisherman sneers again at his smooth, well-kept body, Gregorius gives no answer until he is asked who he is.

Ez wâren dem rîchen dürftigen
There were to-the rich beggar
 alle genâde verzigen,
all graces denied,
 wan daz er al sîn arbeit
except that he all his hardship
 mit willigem muote leit.
with willing spirit suffered.

er gerte in sînem muote

he desired in his spirit

2755

daz in got der guote

that him God the good

sande in eine wüeste,

should-send into a wilderness,

dâ er inne müeste

where he inside must

büezen unz an sînen tô.

atone until to his death.

spilnde bestuont er dise nô.

rejoicing undertook he this distress.

2760

er schûhte âne mâze

he shunned without measure

die liute und die strâze

the people and the road

und daz blôze gevilde:

and the open field:

allez gegen der wilde

all toward the wild

sô rihte der arme sîne wege.

so directed the poor-one his ways.

2765

er wuot diu wazzer bî dem steg.

he waded the waters by the footbridge.

mit marwen füezen ungeschuoch

with tender feet unsbod

streich er walt unde bruoch,

roamed he forest and marsh,

sô daz er sînes gebetes phlac

so that he of-his prayer took-care

ungâz unz an den dritten tac.

unfed until to the third day.

2770

Nu gie ein stîc (der was smal)

Now went a path (it was narrow)

nâhe bî einem sê ze tal.

near by a lake to valley.

den ergreif der lîplôse man

it struck the lifeless man

unde gevolgete im dan

and followed it thence

2775 unz er ein hîuselîn gesach:

until he a little-house saw:

dar kêrte der arme durch gemach.

there turned the poor-one for comfort.

ein vischære het gehûset dâ,

a fisherman had housed there,

den dûhte daz niender anderswâ

to-whom seemed that nowhere elsewhere

daz vischen wæger wære.

the fishing better were.

2780 den bat der riuwesære

him asked the penitent

der herberge durch got.

for-the lodging for God.

von dem dulte er merren spot

from him suffered he greater mockery

dann er gewon wære.

than he accustomed were.

als im der vischære

when to-him the fisherman

2785 sînen schoenen lîp gesach,

his fair body saw,

er wegte daz houbet unde sprach

he shook the head and said

‘Jâ du starker trügenære!

‘Indeed thou strong deceiver!

ob ez sô wære

if it so were

daz ich der tôrheit wielte

that I of-the folly should-wield

daz ich dich frâz behielte,

that I thee glutton should-keep,

2790

sô næmę dich, grôze gebûre,

so would-take thee, big peasant,

der rede vil untûre,

of-the matter very not-dear,

so ich hînte entslief und mîn wîp,

when I tonight should-fall-asleep and my woman,

daz du unz beiden den lîp

that thou from-us both the life

næmest umbe unser guot.

shouldst-take for our goods.

2795

ouwê wie übel diu werlt tuot,

alas how ill the world does,

daz diu liute under in

that the people among them

dultent solhen ungewin,

endure such loss,

sô manegen unnützen man,

so many-a useless man,

des got nie êre gewan,

of-whom God never honor got,

2800

und wüestent doch die liute.

and lay-waste yet the people.

ez wære ein breit geriute

it were a broad clearing

zuo dînen armen wol bewant:

to thy arms well bestowed:

ez zæme baz in dīner hant
it would-befit better in thy hand

2805 ein houwe unde ein gart,
a boe and a goad,

danne dīn umbevart.
than thy wandering-about.

ez ist ein wol gewantez brôt
it is a well spent bread

(daz dir der tiuvel tuo den tôtl)
(that to-thee the devil do the death!)

daz du frâz verswendest.
whiche thou glutton squanderest.

2810 wie du dīne sterke schendest!
how thou thy strength disgracest!

rûme daz hûs vil drâte.’
leave the house very quickly.’

nu was ez harte spâte.
now was it very late.

do emphie der sündære
then received the sinner

diz schelten âne swære
this scolding without grief

2815 und mit lachendem muote.
and with laughing spirit.

sus antwurt im der guote
thus answered him the good-one

‘Herre, ir habt mir wâr geseit.
‘Lord, you have to-me truly said.

swer guote gewarheit
whoever good safety

im selben schaffet, daz ist sin.’
for-him self makes, that is sense.’

guoter naht wunschte er in
good night wisbed he them

2820

und schiet lachende dan.
and parted laughing thence.

der wîselôse man
the guideless man

hôrte gerne disen spot
heard gladly this mockery

unde lobte sîn got
and praised his God

der selben unwerdecheit.
for-the same indignity.

2825

swelch versmæcheit unde leit
whatewer contempt and sorrow

sînem lîbe wære geschehen,
to-his body had happened,

die het er gerne gesehen.
that would-have he gladly seen.

het im der ungeborne
had to-him the base-born-one

grôze slege von zorne
great blows from anger

2830

über sînen rücke geslagen,
over his back struck,

daz het er gerne vertragen,
that would-have he gladly borne,

ob sîner sünden swære
if of-his sins' grief

iht deste ringer wære.
at-all the lighter were.

Des übelen vischæres wîp
The evil fisherman's woman

2835

erbarmte sich über sînen lîp.
pitied herself over his body.

sî bedûhte des daz er wære

her seemed of-that that he were

niht ein trügenære.

not a deceiver.

des scheltens des in der man tete

of-the scolding which him the man did

2840 umb sîne dürfticliche bete,

for his beggarly request,

des ervollēten ir diu ougen.

of-that filled for-her the eyes.

sî sprach 'des ist unlougen

she said 'of-that is no-denying

erne sî ein guot man:

unless-be be a good man:

ze wære ich sihe ez im wol an.

in truth I see it on-him well at.

2845 got lâze dichs niht engelten:

God let thee-for-it not pay:

du hâst getân ein schelten

thou hast done a scolding

daz dînem heile nâhen gât.

which to-thy salvation near goes.

du weist wol daz dîn hûs stât

thou knowest well that thy house stands

den liuten alsô verre:

from-the people so far:

2850 swenne dich unser herre

whenever thee our lord

dîner sælden ermante

of-thy salvation should-remind

und dir sînen boten sante,

and to-thee his messenger should-send,

den soldest du enphâhen baz,

him shouldst thou receive better,

und vil wol bedenken daz:

and very well consider that:

dirn kom kein dürftige nie,

to-thee came no beggar ever,

sît wir begunden bûwen hie,

since we began to-dwell here,

wan dirre armman,

except this poor-man,

der ouch niht vil dar an gewan.

who also not much there by got.

swelch man sich alle tage

whatever man himself all days

begên muoz von bejage,

support must from catch,

als du mit zwîvel hâst getân,

as thou with doubt hast done,

der solde got vor ougen hân.

he should God before eyes have.

daz tuo aber noch, daz rât ich dir,

that do however yet, that counsel I to-thee,

sô helfe dir got, und gunne mir

so help thee God, and grant me

daz ich im ruofen müeze.

that I to-him call may.

sîn vart diu ist unsüeze:

his journey that is unsweet:

jane gêt er nie sô balde,

indeed goes he never so quickly,

ern benahte in dem walde.

unless-he be-benighted in the forest.

engezzent in die wolve niht,

(if)-eat him the wolves not,

daz aber vil lihte geschiht,

which however very likely happens,

2855

2860

2865

2870

sô muoz er dâ ungâz ligen
so must he there unfed lie

und aller gnâden verzigen.
and of-all grace deprived.

lâ mir daz ze gewalte
leave me that in power

daz ich in behalte.
that I him keep.'

2875 Sus gesenfte sî mit güete
 Thus softened she with goodness

dem vischære sîn gemüete,
for-the fisherman his spirit,

daz er ir des gunde
so-that he to-her of-that granted

daz sî dâ zestunde
that she there at-once

dem wîselôsen nâch lief
the guideless-one after ran

2880 und daz sî im her wider rief.
 and that she to-him hither back called.

 Dô si in her widere gewan,
 When she him hither back got,

dô was dem vischenden man
then was for-the fishing man

sîn âbentezzen bereit.
his evening-meal ready.

der grôzen unwirdecheit
for-the great indignity

2885 die er ân aller slahte nôt
 which he without of-any kind need

dem edeln dürftigen bôt,
to-the noble beggar offered,

der wold in daz wîp ergetzen
for-that would him the woman compensate

und begunde im für setzen
and began to-him before to-set

ir aller besten spîse.
their of-all best food.

die versprach der wîse,
it refused the wise-one,

swie vil sî in genôte.
however much she him urged.

ein ranft von haberbrôte
a crust of oat-bread

wart im dar gewonnen
was for-him there gotten

und ein trunc eines brunnen.
and a drink of-a spring.

alsô sprach er wider daz wîp
thus spoke he to the woman

daz kûme sîn sündec lîp
that barely his sinful body

der spîse wert wære.
of-the food worthy were.

dô in der vischære
when him the fisherman

die kranken spîse ezzen sach,
the poor food eat saw,

dô schalt ern aber unde sprach
then scolded he-him again and said

‘Ouwê daz ich diz sehen sol!
Alas that I this see shall!

ja erkenne ich trügenære wol
indeed know I deceivers well

und alle trügewîse.
and all deceiving-ways.

2890

2895

2900

dune hâst sô kranker spîse
thou hast with-so poor food

2905 dich niht unz her begangen.
thyself not until now sustained.

ezn schînt an dînen wangen
it shows on thy cheeks

weder vrost noch hungers nôt:
neither frost nor hunger's distress:

diu sint sô veiz und sô rôet.
they are so fat and so red.

ezn gesach nie man noch wîp
it saw never man nor woman

2910 deheinen wætlîchern lîp:
any handsomer body:

den hâst du niht gewonnen
it hast thou not won

von brôte noch von brunnen.
from bread nor from spring.

du bist gemestet harte wol,
thou art fattened very well,

dîne schenkēl sint sleht, dîne füeze hol,
thy legs are smooth, thy feet hollow,

2915 dîne zêhen gelîmet unde lanc,
thy toes well-jointed and long,

dîne nagel lûter unde blanc.
thy nails clear and white.

dîne füeze solden unden
thy feet should below

breit sîn und zeschrunden
broad be and cracked

als einem wallendem man.
as for-a wandering man.

nune kiuse ich dînen schenkeln an

now perceive I thy legs on

2920

deheinen val noch stôz:

no fall nor bruise:

sine sint niht lange gewesen blôz:

they are not long been bare:

wie wol sî des bewart sint

how well they of-that guarded are

daz sî vrost oder wint

lest them frost or wind

iender habe gerüeret!

anywhere should-have touched!

2925

sleht und unzufüeret

smooth and untangled

ist dîn hâr, und dîn lîch

is thy hair, and thy body

eime gemasten frâze gelîch.

to-a fattened glutton like.

dîn arme und dîne hende

thy arms and thy hands

stênt âne missewende:

stand without blemish:

2930

die sint sô sleht unde sô wîz:

they are so smooth and so white:

du hâst ir anderen vlîz

thou hast of-them other care

an dîner heimelîche

in thy home

danne du hie tuost gelîche.

than thou here dost seemingly.

- 2935 ich bin des âne sorgen
I am of-that without cares
- dune beginnest dich morgen
thou beginnest thyself tomorrow
- dirre nôt ergetzen.
for-this distress to-compensate.
- du kanst dich baz gesetzen,
thou canst thyself better seat,
- dâ du ez veile vindest,
where thou it for-sale findest,
- 2940 dâ du wol überwindest
where thou well overcomest
- weizgot alle dîne nôt,
God-knows all thy distress,
- dâ diz vil durre haberbrôt,
where this very dry oat-bread,
- und dirre brunne wære
and this spring would-be
- dînem munde unmære.
to-thy mouth indifferent.'
- 2945 Dise rede enphie der guote
This speech received the good-one
- mit lachendem muote,
with laughing spirit,
- und woldes geniezen wider got
and would-of-it profit toward God
- daz er leit sô grôzen spot
that he suffered so great mockery
- von alsô swacher geburt.
from so base birth.

ern gab im dehein antwurt

he gave to-him no answer

2950

unze ûf die stunde

until to the hour

daz er in begunde

that he him began

frâgen der mære

to-ask of-the tidings

waz mannes er wære.

what of-man he were.

The Rock and the Key

XVII

Gregorius asks for a wild place to do penance until he dies. The fisherman mockingly offers to row him to a rock in the lake and lock his leg in an iron fetter. Gregorius sleeps in a ruined shed and, in his hurry the next morning, leaves his tablet behind. The fisherman fetters him on the rock, throws the key into the lake, and says he will be free of sin when it is found. Gregorius lives there seventeen years on a trickle of water.

Er sprach 'herre, ich bin ein man

He said 'lord, I am a man

2955

daz ich niht ahte wizzen kan

such-that I not the-measure know can

mîner süntlichen schulde,

of-my sinful guilt,

und suoche umb gotes hulde

and seek for God's favor

eine stat in dirre wüeste,

a place in this wilderness,

- 2960 ûf der ich iemer müeste
upon which I ever must
 bûezen unz an mînen tô
atone until to my death
 vaste mit des lîbes nô.
hard with the body's distress.
 ez ist hiute der dritte tac
it is today the third day
 daz ich der werlde verpfac
that I the world renounced
- 2965 und allez nâch der wilde gie.
and wholly toward the wild went.
 ichn versach mich niht hie
I expected myself not here
 gebiuwes noch liute.
buildings nor people.
 und sît daz mich hiute
and since that me today
 mîn wec zuo iu getragen hât,
my way to you carried has,
- 2970 sô suoche ich gnâde unde rât.
so seek I grace and counsel.
 wizzet ir iender hie bî
know you anywhere here by
 eine stat diu mir gevellic sî,
a place which to-me suitable be,
 einen wilden stein ode ein hol,
a wild rock or a hollow,
 des bewîset mich: sô tuot ir wol.
of-that instruct me: so do you well.'
- 2975 Des antwurte im der vischære dô
To-that answered him the fisherman then
 'sît du des gerst, vriunt, sô wis vrô.
'since thou of-that desirest, friend, so be glad.

dêswâr ich bringe dich wol hein.

truly I bring thee well home.

ich weiz hie bî uns einen stein,

I know here by us a rock,

ein lützel über disen sê:

a little over this lake:

dâ mac dir wol werden wê.

there may for-thee well become woe.

swie wir daz erringen

however we that achieve

daz wir dich dar bringen,

that we thee there bring,

dâ maht du dich mit swæren tagen

there canst thou thyself with heavy days

dînes kumbers wol beklagen.

of-thy affliction well lament.

er ist dir genuoc wilde.

it is for-thee enough wild.

wart des ie dēhein bilde

was of-that ever any sign

daz dîn muot ze riuwe stât,

that thy spirit to rue stands,

sô tuon ich dir einen ganzen rât.

so do I for-thee a whole counsel.

ich hân ein îsenhalten

I have an iron-fetter

nu lange her behalten:

now long hither kept:

die wil ich dir ze stiure geben,

that will I to-thee as aid give,

daz du bestætest dîn leben

that thou fix thy life

ûf dem selben steine.

upon the same rock.

2980

2985

2990

die sliuz zuo dīnem beine.

that lock to thy leg.

2995 geriuwēt dich danne der gedanc,

(if)-ruēs thee then the thought,

sô muost du under dīnen danc

so must thou against thy will

doch dar ûfê bestân.

yet there upon remain.

ez ist der stein alsô getân,

it is the rock so made,

der joch ledege fûeze hât,

who even free feet has,

3000 daz er unsanfte drabe gât.

that he painfully thereon goes.

sî dir nu Ernest dar zuo,

(if)-be to-thee now earnest there to,

sô ganc slâfen und wis vruo,

so go sleep and be early,

dîn îsenhalten nim zuo dir,

thy iron-fetter take to thee,

sitze an mîn schef zuo mir,

sit in my ship with me,

3005 sô ich vor tage vischen var.

when I before day fishing go.

ich kêrê durch dīne liebe dar

I turn for thy love there

und hilfe dir ûf den stein

and help thee onto the rock

und behefte dir dīniu bein

and fasten for-thee thy legs

mit der îsenhalten,

with the iron-fetter,

daz du dâ muost alten
so-that thou there must grow-old

3010

und daz du wærlîche
and that thou truly

ûf disem ertrîche
upon this earth

mich niemer gedrangest;
me never crowd;

des bin ich gar ân angest.
of-that am I wholly without fear.'

swie erz mit hōnschaft tæte,
however he-it with scorn should-do,

3015

sô wâren diz die ræte
so were these the counsels

rehte als er wûnschen wolde,
just as he wish would,

ob er wûnschen solde.
if he wish should.

Nu was der unguote man
Now was the ungood man

harte strenge dar an
very strict there in

3020

daz er im deheinēs gemaches
that he to-him of-no comfort

sô vil sô des obedaches
so much as of-the roof

in sînem hûse engunde.
in his house granted.

sîn wîp im enkunde
his woman from-him could

3025 mit allen ir sinnen
with all her senses

daz niht an gewinnen
that not from win

daz er dar inne wære beliben.
that he there inside had remained.

er wart en hundes wîs ûz getriben
he was in dog's manner out driven

an den hof für die tür.
into the yard before the door.

3030 dâ gie er frœlîchen für.
there went he gladly forth.

Des nahtes wart er geleit
At night was he laid

wider sîner gewonheit
against his custom

in ein sô armez hiuselîn
into a so poor little-house

daz ez niht armer möhte sîn:
that it not poorer could be:

3035 daz was zevallen, âne dach.
that was fallen-in, without roof.

man schuof dem fürsten solhen gemach
one made for-the prince such comfort

der vil gar unmære
which very wholly indifferent

sînem aschman wære.
to-his scullion were.

er vant dar inne swachen rât,
he found there inside poor provision,

3040 weder strô noch bettewât:
neither straw nor bedclothes:

im truoc daz guote wîp dar in
to-him carried the good woman there in

ein lützel rôres under in.
a little of-reed under him.

dô leite er gehalten
then laid he kept

sîne îsenhalten
bis iron-fetter

und sîne tavele darzuo,
and bis tablet there-to,

3045

daz er sî vunde morgen vruo.
that he them should-find morning early.

Wie lützel er die naht lac!
How little he the night lay!

sînes gebetes er phlac
of-his prayer he took-care

unz in diu müede übergie.
until him the weariness overcame.

dô er ze slâfe gevie,
when he to sleep fell,

3050

dô was ez nâhen bî dem tage.
then was it near by the day.

dô fuor der vischære nâch bejage:
then went the fisherman after catch:

dar zuo was er fruo bereit
there to was he early ready

nâch sîner gewonheit.
after his custom.

nu ruofte er sînem gaste:
now called he to-his guest:

3055

dô slief er alsô vaste
then slept he so fast

als ez von grôzer müede kam,
as it from great weariness came,

daz er sîn rüefen niht vernam.

that he his calling not heard.

dô ruofte er im anderstunt:

then called he to-him a-second-time:

3060 er sprach 'mir was ê wol kunt

he said 'to-me was before well known

daz disem trügenære

that for-this deceiver

der rede niht ernest wære.

of-the matter not earnest were.

ichn gerüefe dir niemer mê.'

I call to-thee never more.'

alsus gâhte er zuo dem sê.

thus hastened he to the lake.

3065 Dô diz daz guote wîp ersach

When this the good woman saw

sî wahte in ûf unde sprach

she woke him up and said

'wil du varn, guot man,

'(if)-wilt thou go, good man,

sich, dâ sûmest du dich an.

look, there delayest thou thyself in.

mîn wirt wil varen ûf den sê.'

my host will go upon the lake.'

3070 done wart niht gebiten mê.

then was not waited more.

er vorhte im grôzer swære,

he feared for-himself great grief,

daz er versûmet wære:

that he delayed were:

dâ wider wart er dô

there against became he then

sînes muotes harte vrô,

of-his spirit very glad,

daz er in solde füren hin
that he him should lead thither

3075

als er gelopte wider in.
as he promised to him.

diu liebe und diu leide
the joy and the sorrow

die machten im beide
they made for-him both

ze sînem gâhenne daz
to his hurrying that

daz er der tavele vergaz
that he the tablet forgot

3080

die er zallen zîten
which he at-all times

truoc bî sîner sîten.
carried by his side.

die îsenhalten truog er dan
the iron-fetter carried he thence

unde gâhte nâch dem man.
and hastened after the man.

Er ruofte durch got daz er sîn bite.

3085

He called for God that he for-him should-wait.

alsus fuorte ern mit unsite
thus led he-him with rudeness

ûf jenen wilden stein:
onto yonder wild rock:

dâ beslôz er im diu bein
there locked he for-him the legs

vaste in die îsenhalten.
fast into the iron-fetter.

er sprach 'hie muost du alten.
he said 'here must thou grow-old.

3090

dichn füere mit sînen sinnen

unless-thee lead with his wiles

der tievel von hinnen,

the devil from hence,

dune kumst hin abe nimmer mê'.

thou comest thither down never more'.

den slüzzel warf er in den sê,

the key threw he into the lake,

3095 er sprach 'daz weiz ich âne wân,

he said 'that know I without doubt,

swenn ich den slüzzel funden hân

when I the key found have

ûz der tiefen ûnde,

out-of the deep wave,

sô bist du âne sünde

so art thou without sin

unde wol ein heilic man.'

and well a holy man.'

3100 er lie in dâ und schiet er dan.

he left him there and parted he thence.

Der arme Grêgôrjus,

The poor Gregorius,

nu beleip er alsus

now remained he thus

ûf dem wilden steine

upon the wild rock

aller gnâden eine.

of-all grace alone.

3105 ern hete andern gemach,

he-not had other comfort,

niuwan der himel was sîn dach.

except the heaven was his roof.

ern hâte deheinen scherm mê

he had no shelter more

für rîfen noch für snê,

against boarfrost nor against snow,

für wint noch für regen,

against wind nor against rain,

niuwan den gotes segen.

except the God's blessing.

3110

im wâren kleider vremede,

to-him were clothes strange,

niuwan ein hærîn hemedede:

except a hair shirt:

im wâren bein und arme blôz.

to-him were legs and arms bare.

ern möhte der spîse die er nôz,

he could of-the food which he ate,

als ich iu rehte nu sage,

as I to-you rightly now tell,

3115

weizgot vierzehn tage

God-knows fourteen days

vor dem hunger niht geleben,

for the hunger not live,

im enwære gegeben

to-him unless-were given

der trôstgeist von Krite,

the comforting-spirit from Christ,

der im daz leben vriste,

who for-him the life prolonged,

3120

daz er vor hunger genas.

so-that he from hunger survived.

ich sage iu waz sîn spîse was.

I tell you what his food was.

ez seic ûz dem steine

it trickled out-of the rock

wazzers harte kleine.

of-water very little.

3125 dar under gruob er ein hol:

there under dug he a hollow.

daz wart mit einem trunke vol.

that became with one drink full.

ez was sô kleinē daz ez nâch sage

it was so little that it by report

zwischen naht unde tage

between night and day

vil kûme vollez geran.

very barely full ran.

3130 daz tranc der gnâdenlôse man.

that drank the graceless man.

sus lebt er sibenzehen jâr.

thus lived he seventeen years.

daz dunket manegen niht wâr:

that seems to-many-a-one not true:

des gelouben velsche ich

that belief falsify I

wan got ist niht unmügelich

for to-God is nothing impossible

3135 ze tuone swaz er wil,

to do whatever he will,

im ist keines wunders ze vil.

to-him is of-no wonder too much.

The Envoys from Rome

XVIII

The pope dies, and the Romans cannot agree on a successor, so they leave the choice to God. A voice tells two wise Romans that the chair belongs to a man named Gregorius, who has sat seventeen years on a rock in Aquitaine. The two are sent to find him. After three days lost in the wilderness they reach the fisherman's hut and stay the night.

Dô der gnâden eine

When the of-grace alone-one

ûf dem wilden steine

upon the wild rock

sibenzehen jâr gesaz

seventeen years sat

unde got an im vergaz

and God in him forgot

sîner houbetschulde

bis capital-guilt

unz ûf sîne hulde,

until to his favor,

dô starp, als ich ez las,

then died, as I it read,

der dô ze Rôme bâbest was.

he-who then at Rome pope was.

alse schiere er starp,

as soon he died,

3140

3145

ein ieglich Rômære warp

an every Roman strove

besunder sînem künne

separately for-bis kin

durch die gotes wünne

for the God's delight

umb den selben gewalt.

for the same power.

3150 ir strît wart sô manecvalt

their strife became so manifold

daz sî beide durch nît

that they both through envy

unde durch der êren gît

and through the honor's greed

bescheiden niene kunden

decide not-at-all could

wem sî des stuoles gunden.

to-whom they of-the chair granted.

3155 Nu rieten sî über al

Now counseled they over all

daz sî liezen die wal

that they should-leave the choice

an unseren herren got,

to our lord God,

daz sîn genâde und sîn gebot

that his grace and his command

erzeigte wer im wære

should-show who to-him were

3160 guot ze rihtære.

good as judge.

dienstes si im gedâhten,

of-service they to-him thought,

daz sî ouch volbrâhten

which they also carried-out

mit almuosen und mit gebete.

with alms and with prayer.

got dô genædeclîchen tete,

God then graciously did,

der ie der guoten vrâge riet.

who ever to-the good question counseled.

3165

eines nahtes er beschiet

one night he revealed

wîsen Rômæren zwein,

to-wise Romans two,

an den sô volleclicîchen schein

on whom so fully shone

diu triuwe und diu wârheit

the faithfulness and the truth

daz ir wort was ein eit.

that their word was an oath.

3170

Dâ sî besunder lâgen

Where they apart lay

und ir gebetes pflâgen,

and of-their prayer took-care,

diu gotes stimme sprach in zuo

the God's voice spoke to-them to

daz sî des nâhsten tages vruo

that they of-the next day early

die Rômære zesamene bâten

the Romans together should-summon

3175

und in daz kunt tæten

and to-them that known should-make

waz gotes wille wære

what God's will were

umbe ir rihtære.

about their judge.

ez wære gesezzen eine
there were seated alone

3180 ûf einem wilden steine
upon a wild rock

ein man in Equitânjâ
a man in Aquitaine

(den enweste niemen dâ)
(him knew no-one there)

wol sibenzehen jâr:
well seventeen years:

zuo dem wære für wâr
to him were for true

3185 der stuol vil wol bewant,
the chair very well bestowed,

und wære Grêgôrjus genant.
and were Gregorius named.

daz erz in beiden tete kunt,
that he-it to-them both made known,

daz meinde daz eines mannes munt
that meant that one man's mouth

niht mac erziugen wol,
not can witness well,

3190 swaz grôze kraft haben sol.
whatever great force have shall.

Nune weste ir deweder niht
Now knew of-them neither anything

umbe dise geschicht,
about this happening,

daz in diu rede beiden
that to-them the speech both

des nahtes wart bescheiden,
at night was revealed,

unz sî zesamene kâmen

until they together came

3195

und ez under in vernâmen.

and it among themselves heard.

unde als sî getâten

and when they did

als sî vernomen hâten,

as they heard bad,

dô einer sîne rede gesprach

when one his speech spoke

und der ander mite jach,

and the other with declared,

3200

dô geloubten Rômære

then believed Romans

vil gerne disiu mære:

very gladly these tidings:

ze gote wâren sî vil vrô.

toward God were they very glad.

die alten herren wurden dô

the old lords were then

ze boten beide gesant

as messengers both sent

3205

in Equitânjam daz lant,

into Aquitaine the land,

daz sî den guoten man

that they the good man

suochten unde bræhten in dan.

should-see and should-bring him thence.

Nu bekumberte sî daz:

Now troubled them that:

der stein dâ er ûffe saz,

the rock where he upon sa,

3210

derne wart in niht benant.

it was to-them not named.

mit zwîvel fuorens in daz lant.

with doubt went-they into the land.

dâ gevorschten sî genuoc,

there inquired they enough,

swar sî ir wec truoc:

wherever them their way carried:

3215 nune kunde in nieman gesagen.

now could to-them no-one tell.

daz begunden sî von herzen klagen

that began they from heart to-lament

dem der in beruochet

to-him who them cares-for

der genâde an in suochet.

who grace from him seeks.

nu gesande in got in ir sin,

now sent to-them God into their mind,

3220 solden si immer vinden in,

should they ever find him,

daz man in danne müeste

that one him then must

suochen in der wüeste.

seek in the wilderness.

sus begunden sî gâhen,

thus began they to-hasten,

dâ si daz gebirge sâhen,

where they the mountains saw,

3225 in die wilde zuo dem sê.

into the wild to the lake.

der zwîvel tet in harte wê

the doubt did to-them very woe

daz sî niht wizzen kunden

that they not know could

wâ sî ir herren funden.

where they their lord should-find.

Dô wîste sî diu wilde

Then directed them the wilderness

ze walde von gevilde.

to forest from open-field.

3230

sus vuor diu wegelôse diet,

thus went the pathless folk,

als in ir gemüete riet,

as to-them their spirit counseled,

irre unz an den dritten tac.

astray until to the third day.

einen stîc âne huofslac

a path without hoofprint

den ergriffen sî dô:

it struck they then:

3235

des wâren sî vil vrô.

of-that were they very glad.

der grasege wec ungebert

the grassy way untrodden

der truoc sî verre in einen wert,

it carried them far into a river-meadow,

dâ der vischære bî dem sê

where the fisherman by the lake

saz dâ von ich iu sagte ê,

dwelt there of I to-you told before,

3240

der den sælderîchen

who the blessed-one

sô ungezogenlîchen

so rudely

in sînen dûrften enphie

in his needs received

und die übele an im begie

and the evil to him committed

3245 daz er in durch sînen haz

that he him through his hatred

sazte dâ er noch saz,

set where he still sat,

ûf den durren wilden stein

upon the dry wild rock

unde im dâ sîniu bein

and for-him there his legs

slôz in die îsenhalten.

locked into the iron-fetter.

3250 dô die zwêne alten

when the two old-ones

daz hiuselîn gesâhen,

the little-house saw,

ze sælden sî des jâhen,

as good-fortune they of-that declared,

daz sî dâ nâch ir unmaht

that they there after their weakness

geruowen müesen die naht.

rest might the night.

The Key in the Fish

XIX

The fisherman serves his wealthy guests a large fish and finds the key in its belly. Remembering his cruelty, he confesses the whole story, and the envoys ask him to guide them to the rock, though he believes the man long dead. On the rock they find Gregorius naked and wasted, yet the Holy Spirit has kept his learning intact. Weeping, they adjure him by God to say whether he is Gregorius.

Gefüeret hâten sî mit in

Brought had they with them

3255

die spîse (daz was ein schoener sin)

the food (that was a fine thought)

der sî bedorften ze nôt,

which they needed of necessity,

beidiu wîn unde brôt

both wine and bread

und dar zuo swaz in tohte,

and there to whatever for-them was-fit,

daz man gefüeren mohte.

which one bring could.

3260

des enphie der vischære

for-that received the fisherman

mit vröuden âne swære

with joys without grief

die wol berâten geste.

the well provided guests.

er sach wol unde weste,

he saw well and knew,

er möhte ir wol geniezen:

he might from-them well profit:

3265

desn wolde in niht verdriezen,

of-that would him not irk,

ern schüef in rîchen gemach,
he should-make for-them rich comfort,

wand er sî wol berâten sach.
for he them well provided saw.

daz tet er mêre umbe ir guot
that did he more for their goods

3270 denne durch sînen milten muot.
than through his bountiful spirit.

er enphie sî baz dan den gast
he received them better than the guest

dem des guotes gebrast,
to-whom of-the goods lacked,

Grêgôrjum den reinen man:
Gregorius the pure man:

in dûhte dan wære niht nutzes an.
to-him seemed there were no profit on.

3275 Dô sî gewonnen guoten gemach,
When they got good comfort,

der vischære zuo den gesten sprach
the fisherman to the guests spoke

‘mir ist harte wol geschehen,
‘to-me is very well happened,

sît ich hie solde gesehen
since I here should see

alsô guote liute:
so good people:

3280 ich hân gevangen hiute
I have caught today

einen harte schoenen visch.’
a very fine fish.’

sus wart er ûf einen tisch
thus was it upon a table

für die herren geleit.
before the lords laid.

nu hete er niht misseseit:

now bad he not mis-said:

wand er was lanc unde grôz;

for it was long and great;

des er vil gerne genôz

of-that he very gladly profited

an den phenningen.

in the pennies.

dâ wart ein kurzez dîngen:

there was a short bargaining:

sî hiezen in im gelten sâ,

they bade it to-him pay straightway,

unde bâten in dâ

and asked him there

den wirt selben gellen.

the host himself to-gut.

nu begunde er in zevellen,

now began he it to-cut-open,

daz si ez alle sâhen an.

so-that they it all looked at.

dô vant der schatzgîre man

then found the treasure-greedy man

den slüzzel in sînem magen,

the key in his stomach,

von dem ir ê hôrtet sagen,

of which you before heard tell,

3285

3290

3295

dâ er Grêgôrjum mite

where he Gregorius with

beslôz mit unsüezem site

locked with unsweet manner

vor sibenzehen jâren ê

before seventeen years ago

3300 unde warf in in den sê

and threw it into the lake

und sprach, ze swelher stunde

and said, at whatever hour

er den slüzzel funde

he the key should-find

ûz des meres ûnde,

out-of the sea's wave,

sô wære er âne sünde.

so were he without sin.

3305 do er in in dem vische vant,

when he it in the fish found,

dô erkande er sich zehant

then recognized he himself at-once

wie er getobet hâte:

how he raved bad:

und vie sich alsô drâte

and seized himself so quickly

mit beiden handen in daz hâr.

with both hands into the hair.

3310 ich het im geholfen für wâr,

I would-have him helped for true,

wære ich im gewesen bî,

were I to-him been by,

swie erbolgen ich im anders sî.

however angered I at-him otherwise be.

Do er sich geroufte genuoc
When he himself tore enough
 und sich zen brüsten gesluoc,
and himself on-the breasts struck,
 dô frâgten in die herren
then asked him the lords
 waz im möhte gewerren,
what him might trouble,
 dô si in sô tiure sâhen klagen.
when they him so bitterly saw lament.
 nu begunde er in vil rehte sagen
now began he to-them very rightly to-tell
 umb Grêgôrjum sînen gast,
about Gregorius his guest,
 daz in des mæres niht gebrast.
so-that to-them of-the tale nothing lacked.
 ich wæne ez unnütze wære,
I think it useless were,
 ob ich daz vorder mære
if I the former tale
 iu nu aber anderstunt
to-you now again a-second-time
 mit ganzen worten tæte kunt:
with whole words should-make known:
 sô machte ich ûz einer rede zwô.
so would-make I out-of one tale two.
 die boten wurden harte vrô:
the messengers became very glad:

3315

3320

3325

wan si spürten an dem mære

for they traced by the tale

daz ez der selbe wære

that it the same were

an den in got selbe riet

on whom to-them God himself counseled

3330 und in ze bâbest beschiet.

and him as pope revealed.

Dô er in beiden gelîche

When he to-them both alike

alsô offenlîche

so openly

sîne bîhte getete,

his confession made,

ir fûeze suochte er mit bete,

their feet sought he with prayer,

3335 daz si im etelîchen rât

that they for-him some counsel

tæten für die missetât.

should-do for the misdeed.

dô sî den grôzen riuwen

when they the great rue

mit geistlîchen triuwen

with spiritual faithfulness

gesâhen an dem armen,

saw in the poor-one,

3340 nu begund er sî erbarmen,

now began he them to-move-to-pity,

und gehiezen sî im daz,

and promised they to-him that,

er möhte vil deste baz

he might very the better

komen von sînem meine,

come from his sin,

ob er sî zuo dem steine

if he them to the rock

des morgens wolde wîsen.

in-the morning would guide.

3345

nu sâhen im die grîsen

now saw for-him the gray-ones

diu ougen über wallen,

the eyes over flow,

die heizen zâher vallen

the hot tears fall

über sînen grâwen bart.

over his gray beard.

er sprach 'waz touc uns diu vart?

he said 'what avails us the journey?

3350

vil wol wîse ich iuch dar:

very well guide I you there:

die vart verliese wir gar.

the journey lose we wholly.

ich weiz wol, erst nu lange tât.

I know well, he-is now long dead.

ich lie in in maneger nôt

I left him in many-a distress

ûf dem wilden steine:

upon the wild rock:

3355

hæt er der niewan eine,

had he of-them only one,

ezn möhtē dehein lîp erwern.

it could no body endure.

irn dürfet dîngen noch gern

you-not need hope nor desire

daz wir in lebenden vinden:

that we him living find:

- 3360 enwær er von kalten winden
were he by cold winds
 und von froste niht verderbet,
and by frost not destroyed,
 der hunger heten ersterbet.
the hunger would-have-him killed.'

Nu erkanden sî den gotes gewalt
Now recognized they the God's power

sô starken und sô manecvalt,
so strong and so manifold,

- 3365 ob er sîn geruochte pflegen,
if he of-him deigned to-take-care,

daz in harte wol sîn segen
that him very well his blessing

gefriste vor aller freise.
preserved from all peril.

ûf die kurzen reise
upon the short journey

sô wart er tiure gemant:
so was he dearly urged:

- 3370 die gelobte er in ze hant.
it promised he them at once.

Des morgenes vil vruo
In-the morning very early

kêrten sî dem wilden steine zuo.
turned they to-the wild rock toward.

dô sî mit arbeiten

when they with toils

die boume zuo bereiten

the boats to prepared

daz si ûf den stein kâmen

that they onto the rock came

3375

und des war nâmen

and of-that heed took

wâ Grêgôrjus wære,

where Gregorius were,

der lebende marterære,

the living martyr,

ein harte schœne man,

a very fair man,

dem vil lützel iender an

on-whom very little anywhere on

3380

hunger ode frost schein

hunger or frost appeared

ode armuot dehein,

or poverty any,

von zierlichem gerâte

of handsome equipment

an lîbe und an der wæte,

in body and in the garments,

daz niemen deheine

so-that no-one any

3385

von edelem gesteine

of noble gems

von sîden und von golde

of silk and of gold

bezzer haben solde,

better have should,

wol ze wunsche gesniten,

well to wish cut,

- 3390 der mit lachenden siten
who with laughing manners
 mit gelphen ougen gienge
with bright eyes should-go
 und liebe vriunt enpfienge,
and dear friends should-receive,
 mit goltvarwen hâre,
with gold-colored hair,
 daz iuch in ze wâre
so-that you him in truth
- 3395 ze sehenne luste harte,
to see should-please greatly,
 mit wol geschornem barte,
with well shorn beard,
 in allen wîs alsô getân
in all ways so made
 als er ze tanze solde gân,
as he to dance should go,
 mit sô gelîmter beinwât
with so close-fitting leg-wear
- 3400 sô sî zer werlde beste stât,
as it in-the world best stands,
 den enfunden sî niender dâ:
him found they nowhere there:
 er mohtę wol wesen anderswâ.
he might well be elsewhere.
 Ich sage iu waz si funden.
I tell you what they found.
 dô si suochen begunden
when they to-search began
- 3405 ûf dem wilden steine,
upon the wild rock,

der guote und der reine

the good and the pure-one

der wart ir schiere innen.

he became of-them soon aware.

nu wolde er in entrinnen:

now would he from-them escape:

wan sîn scham diu was grôz,

for his shame that was great,

er was nacket unde blôz.

he was naked and bare.

3410

nu mohter niht loufen drâte,

now could-be not run quickly,

wand er gebende hâte

for he fetters had

an ietwederem beine.

on each leg.

er viel zuo dem steine:

he fell to the rock:

sus wolde er sich verborgen hân.

thus would he himself hidden have.

3415

dô er sî sach zuo im gân,

when he them saw to him go,

dô brach er für die scham ein krût.

then broke he for the shame a plant.

sus funden sî den gotes trût,

thus found they the God's beloved,

einen dürftęgen ûf der erde,

a beggar upon the earth,

ze gote in hôhem werde,

to God in high worth,

3420

den liuten widerzæme,

to-the people repugnant,

ze himel vil genæme.

to heaven very pleasing.

Der arme was ze wâre

The poor-one was in truth

erwachsen von dem hâre,

overgrown with the hair,

3425 verwalken zuo der swarte,

matted to the skin,

an houbet unde an barte:

on head and on beard:

ê was ez ze rehte reit,

before was it to right curly,

nu ruozvar von der arbeit.

now soot-colored from the hardship.

ê wâren im diu wangen

before were for-him the cheeks

3430 mit roete bevangen

with redness suffused

mit gemischter wîze

with mingled whiteness

und veiz mit guotem vlîze,

and plump with good care,

nu swarz und in gewichen,

now black and in sunk,

daz antlütze erblichen.

the face faded.

3435 ê wâren im für wâr

before were for-him for true

diu ougen gelpf unde clâr,

the eyes bright and clear,

der munt ze vröuden gestalt,

the mouth for joys shaped,

nu bleich unde kalt,

now pale and cold,

diu ougen tief trüebe und rôr,

the eyes deep dim and red,

als ez der mangel gebôt,
as it the want commanded,

3440

mit brâwen behangen
with brows hung

rûhen unde langen;
rough and long;

ê grôz ze den liden allen
before great at the limbs all

daz vleisch, nu zuo gevallen
the flesh, now to fallen

unze an daz gebeine:
until to the bones:

3445

er was sô glîche kleine
he was so evenly thin

an beinen unde an armen,
in legs and in arms,

ez möhte got erbarmen.
it might God move-to-pity.

Dâ im diu îsenhalte lac
Where on-him the iron-fetter lay

beidiu naht unde tac,
both night and day,

3450

dâ het si im ob dem fuoze
there had it for-him above the foot

daz vleisch harte unsuoze
the flesh very unsweetly

unz an daz bein vernozenzen,
until to the bone eaten-away,

sô daz sî was begozzen,
so that it was drenched,

mit bluote zallen stunden
with blood at-all hours

3455

von den vrischen wunden.
from the fresh wounds.

daz was sîn swerendiu arbeit,
that was his festering hardship,

ân ander nôt die er leit.
without other distress which he suffered.

ich gelîche in disen sachen,
I liken-(him) in these things,

3460 als der ein lîlachen
as if-one a linen-sheet

über dorne spreite:
over thorns spread:

man möhte im sam gereite
one might on-him just-as readily

allez sîn gebeine
all his bones

grôz unde kleine
great and small

3465 haben gezalt durch sîne hût.
have counted through his skin.

swie sêre der gotes trût
however sorely the God's beloved

an dem lîbe wære
in the body were

verwandelt von der swære,
transformed by the grief,

nu was der heilige geist
now was the holy spirit

3470 dar an gewesen sîn volleist
there in been his helper

alsô gänzlichen
so entirely

daz im niht was entwichen,
that from-him nothing was departed,

erne het sîn alten

unless-be had his old

kunst unz her behalten

art until now kept

von worten und von buochen.

of words and of books.

die in dâ vuoren suochen,

those-who him there went to-seek,

als in die hâten gesehen,

when him they had seen,

als ich iu nu hân verjehen

as I to-you now have declared

des libes alsô armen,

of-the body so poor,

dô begunde er in erbarmen

then began he them to-move-to-pity

sô sêre daz der ougen flôz

so sorely that of-the eyes flood

regens wîs ir wât begôz.

in-rain's manner their garments drenched.

sî beswuoren in bî gote

they adjured him by God

und bî sînem gebote,

and by his commandment,

daz er sî wizzen lieze

that he them know should-let

ob er Grêgôrjus hieze.

whether he Gregorius were-called.

3475

3480

3485

The Tablet in the Nettles

XX

Gregorius admits his name, hears that he has been chosen, and refuses, calling himself too unclean to be looked at. He asks God for a sign, the return of his key, and the fisherman confesses and produces it. Freed from the rock, Gregorius asks for his tablet. The fisherman says the shed is burned and overgrown, but Gregorius will not leave without it, and they find it among the nettles, as new as the day it was made.

Dô er sô tiure wart gemant,

When he so dearly was urged,

dô tet er in bekant

then made he to-them known

daz erz Grêgôrjus wære.

that he-it Gregorius were.

3490 nu sagten si im diu mære,

now told they to-him the tidings,

war umbe si ûz wæren komen,

what for they out were come,

als ir ê habet vernomen,

as you before have heard,

als in des nahtes beiden

as to-them of-the night both

von gote wart bescheiden,

by God was revealed,

3495 daz er in hæte genant,

that he him had named,

selbe erwelt unde erkant,

himself chosen and acknowledged,

und ze rihtære gesat

and as judge set

hie en erde an sîn selbes stat.

here on earth in his own place.

- Als er die botschaft vernam,
When he the message heard,
- wie nâhen ez sînem herzen kam! 3500
how near it to-his heart came!
- dô sancte der gotes werde
then sank the God's worthy-one
- daz houbet zuo der erde:
the head to the earth:
- mit manegen trahen er dô sprach,
with many tears he then spoke,
- daz er sî nie an gesach
so-that he them never at looked
- ‘sît ir kristenliute, 3505
‘(if)-are you Christian-people,
- sô êret got hiute
so honor God today
- und gêt vil drâte von mir,
and go very quickly from me,
- wand ich der êren wol enbir
for I of-the honor well do-without
- daz mir diu gnâde iht geschehe
that to-me the grace at-all befall
- daz ich iemen guoter ane sehe 3510
that I anyone good at look
- mit sô süntlichen ougen.
with so sinful eyes.
- gote enist daz niht tougen,
to-God is that not hidden,
- mîn vleisch ist sô unreine
my flesh is so unclean
- daz ich billich eine
that I rightly alone
- belîbe unz an mînen tût. 3515
remain until to my death.

daz mir der êwigen nôt
that for-me of-the eternal distress

diu sêle über werde,
the soul over become,

daz koufe ich ûf der erde.
that buy I upon the earth.

wære ich bî in hiute,
were I by them today,

3520 ez müesen guote liute
it must good people

enkelten mîner missetât.
pay for-my misdeed.

sô hôhe sô mîn schulde stât,
so high as my guilt stands,

sô möhte boum unde gras,
so might tree and grass,

und swaz ie grüenes bî mir was,
and whatever ever green by me was,

3525 dorren von der grimme
wither from the fury

mîner unreinen stimme
of-my unclean voice

und von der unsüeze
and from the unsweetness

mîner baren füeze.
of-my bare feet.

daz der süezen weter gruoß,
that the sweet weather's greeting,

dâ von diu werlt gestên muoz

there from the world stand-firm must

3530

und diu heimliche linde

and the familiar mild-air

von regen und von winde

from rain and from wind

mir sint alsô gemeine

to-me are so common

als ob ich wære reine,

as if I were pure,

und der liechte sunnenschin

and the bright sunshine

3535

sô deumüetę geruochet sîn

so humble deigns to-be

daz er mich volleclichen an

that he me fully on

schînet als einen man,

shines as a man,

der gnâden wære mîn vleisch unwert.

of-the grace were my flesh unworthy.

daz ir mîn ze meister gert,

that you me as master desire,

3540

daz ist ein erdâhter spot.

that is a devised mockery.

ich hân umb unsern herren got

I have with our lord God

verdienet leider verre baz

deserved alas for better

sînen zornlîchen haz

his wrathful hatred

3545 denne daz er an mich kêre

than that he to me turn

die gnâde und die êre

the grace and the honor

die ein bâbest haben sol.

which a pope have shall.

man enbirt mîn ze Rôme wol:

one does-without me at Rome well:

iu wære ze mir niht wol geschehen.

to-you would-have with me not well happened.

3550 muget ir doch mînen lîp sehen?

can you yet my body see?

der ist so ungenæme,

it is so unpleasing,

den êren widerzæme.

to-the honor repugnant.

wart mir ie herren vuore kunt,

(if)-was to-me ever lord's manner known,

der ist vergezzen ze dirre stunt.

that is forgotten at this hour.

3555 ich bin der liute ungewon:

I am to-the people unaccustomed:

den bin ich billichen von.

from-them am I rightly away.

ir herren nemet selbe war,

you lords take self heed,

mir sint verwandelt vil gar

to-me are changed very wholly

der sin, der lîp und die site,

the mind, the body and the manners,

die dem von rehte wonent mite

which him by right dwell with

der grôzes gewaltes pflegen sol:

who of-great power take-care shall:

ichn zime ze bâbest niht wol.

I befit as pope not well.

vil sæligen liute,

very blessed people,

nu lât mir daz hiute

now let for-me that today

ze einem heile sîn geschehen

as a salvation be happened

daz ir mich hie habt gesehen,

that you me here have seen,

und geruochet iuch erbarmen

and deign yourselves to-pity

über mich vil armen

over me very poor-one

und gedenket mîn ze gote.

and think of-me to God.

wir haben von sînem gebote,

we have from his commandment,

swer umbē den sündære bite,

whoever for the sinner prays,

dâ lœse er sich selben mite.

there frees he himself self with.

nu ist zît daz wir uns scheiden:

now is time that we us part:

waz frumt iu daz beiden?

what profits you that both?

3560

3565

3570

- 3575 ir vröut an mir des tiuvels muot.
you gladden in me the devil's spirit.
- mîn kurzwîle ist alze guot.
my pastime is all-too good.
- ich bûwe hie zewâre
I dwell here truly
- in dem sibenzehenden jâre,
in the seventeenth year,
- daz ich nie menschen gesach.
so-that I never human saw.
- 3580 ich fürhte, diu vröude und der gemach
I fear, the joy and the comfort
- diu ich mit rede mit iu hie hân,
which I with speech with you here have,
- ich müeze ir ze buoze stân
I must for-it in penance stand
- vor im der keine missetât
before him who no misdeed
- ungerochen niene lâť.
unavenged ever leaves.'
- 3585 Sus stuont er ûf und wolde dan.
Thus stood he up and would away.
- dô beswuoren in die zwêne man
then adjured him the two men
- alsô verre bî gote
so far by God
- und bî sînem vorhtlîchen gebote
and by his fearsome commandment
- daz er doch stille gesaz
that he yet still sat
- 3590 und hôte ir rede fürbaz.
and heard their speech further.

nu buten sî im beide

now offered they to-him both

mit triuwen und mit eide

with faithfulness and with oath

der rede solhe sicherheit,

of-the speech such surety,

diu im dâ was vür geleit,

which to-him there was before laid,

daz er sî geloubte baz.

that he it believed better.

3595

er sprach 'ich was ein vollez vaz

he said 'I was a full vessel

süntlicher schanden,

of-sinful disgraces,

dô ich mit disen banden

when I with these bonds

bestatet wart ûf disen stein,

set was upon this rock,

diu ir hie sehent umb mîniu bein.

which you here see about my legs.

3600

[diu ich hie trage mit sorgen,

[which I here bear with cares,

dô wart alsus geborgen

then was thus stowed

der slüzzel dâ mit ich dar in

the key there with I there in

alsô vaste versperret bin:

so fast locked am:

er wart geworfen in den sê.

it was thrown into the lake.

3605

der in dar warf, der sprach niht mê,

he-who it there threw, he said not more,

wan sô er in fünde,

except when he it should-find,

sô wære ich âne sünde.]

so were I without sin.]

nu ist niemens sünde alsô grôz,

now is no-one's sin so great,

3610 des gewalt die helle entslôz,

whose power the hell unlocked,

des genâde sîn noch merre.

whose grace unless-be still greater.

ob got unser herre

if God our lord

mîner manegen missetât

of-my many-a misdeed

durch sînen trôst vergezzen hât,

through his comfort forgotten has,

3615 und ob ich reine worden bin,

and if I pure become am,

des muoz er uns drin

of-that must he us three

ein rehtez wortzeichen geben,

a right token give,

ode sich muoz mîn leben

or itself must my life

ûf disem steinē verenden.

upon this rock end.

3620 er muoz mir wider senden

he must to-me back send

den slüzzel dâ mit ich dâ bin

the key there with I there am

sus vaste beslozzen in,

thus fast locked in,

ode ich gerûme ez niemer hie.'

or I leave it never here.'

nu viel der vischære an diu knie

now fell the fisherman on the knees

mit manegen trahen für in,

with many tears before him,

er sprach 'vil lieber herre, ich bin

he said 'very dear lord, I am

der selbe sündige man

the same sinful man

der sich verworhte dar an.

who himself undid there in.

ich arme verlorne

I poor lost-one

ich enpfie iuch mit zorne.

I received you with anger.

diz was diu wirtschaft diech iu bôt:

this was the hospitality which-I to-you offered:

ich gab iu schelten für daz brôt,

I gave to-you scolding for the bread,

ich schancte iu ze vlîze

I poured for-you with zeal

mit manegem itewîze.

with many-a reproach.

sus behielt ich iuch eine naht

thus kept I you one night

mit unwirde und mit grôzem braht.

with indignity and with great clamor.

alsus bin ich worden alt

thus am I become old

daz ich der sünde nie engalt:

that I for-the sin never paid:

ez ist der sêle noch gespart.

it is for-the soul yet saved-up.

3625

3630

3635

- 3640 ichn genieze danne dirre vart
unless-I profit then from-this journey
 die ich her mit triuwen hân getân,
which I here with faithfulness have made,
 sô sol ich wol ze buoze stân.
so shall I well in penance stand.
 darnâch volgte ich iuwer bete,
thereafter followed I your request,
 wan daz ichz in honschaft tete:
except that I-it in scorn did:
 3645 ich brâhte iuch ûf disen stein:
I brought you onto this rock:
 alsus beslôz ich iuwer bein
thus locked I your legs
 und warf den slûzzel in den sê.
and threw the key into the lake.
 ichn gedâhte an iuch niemer mê
I thought of you never more
 unz gester mîn sündigiu hant
until yesterday my sinful hand
 3650 den slûzzel in einem vische vant.
the key in a fish found.
 daz sâhen dise herren wol,
that saw these lords well,
 ob ichz mit in erziugen sol.
if I-it with them witness shall.'
 Er entslôz die îsenhalten.
He unlocked the iron-fetter.
 dô teilten die alten
then shared the old-ones
 3655 mit im ir pfeffîchiu kleit:
with him their priestly clothes:
 und als er an wart geleit,
and when he on was laid,

mit in fuorten sî dan
with them led they thence

disen sündenlösen man
this sinless man

ab dem wilden steine.
off the wild rock.

nu was vil harte kleine
now was very greatly small

sînes armen lîbes maht.
of-his poor body's strength.

nu beliben sî die naht
now remained they the night

mit dem vischære.
with the fisherman.

des jâmer was vil swære.
his misery was very heavy.

er suochte buoze unde rât
he sought penance and counsel

umb die grôzen missetât
for the great misdeed

die er vor an im begie,
which he before to him committed,

do er in sô hoenlîche empfie.
when he him so scornfully received.

nu wuoch diu grôze triuwe
now washed the great faithfulness

und diu ganze riuwe
and the whole rue

und der ougen ûnde
and the eyes' flood

den flecken sîner sünde,
the stain of-his sin,

daz im diu sêle genas.
so-that for-him the soul was-saved.

3660

3665

3670

Dannoch dô Grêgôrjus was

Still when Gregorius was

3675 in der sünden gewalt,

in the sins' power,

als iu dô vor was gezalt,

as to-you there before was told,

dô er von sînem gewalte gie

when he from his power went

und in der vischære enpfie

and him the fisherman received

in sînem hûs sô swache

in his house so poorly

3680 und in mit ungemache

and him with discomfort

des nahtes beriet,

of-the night provided,

morgen dô er danne schiet,

morning when he then parted,

und er der tavele vergaz,

and he the tablet forgot,

die wîle er ûf dem steine saz,

the while he upon the rock sat,

3685 sô gemuote in nie mêre

so troubled him never more

dehein dinc alsô sêre.

any thing so sorely.

nu gedâhte er aber dar an,

now thought he again there on,

und mante den vischenden man

and urged the fishing man

daz er durch got tæte,

that he for God should-do,

3690 ob er sî funden hæte,

if he it found had,

daz sî im wider würde,
that it to-him back should-become,

daz sîner sünden bürde
so-that of-his sins' burden

deste ringer wære.
the lighter were.

dô sprach der vischære
then said the fisherman

‘Leider ichn gesach sî nie.
Alas I saw it never.

3695

nu saget, wâ liezet ir sî hie,
now tell, where left you it here,

ode wie vergâzent ir ir sus?’
or how forgot you it thus?’

‘ich lie sî’ sprach Grêgôrjus,
I left it’ said Gregorius,

‘in dem hiuselîne dâ ich slief.
‘in the little-house where I slept.

dô man mir des morgens rief,
when one to-me in-the morning called,

3700

dô wart mîn angst swære,
then became my fear heavy,

daz ich versûmet wære:
that I delayed were:

ich erschrihtē von slâfe und îlte iu nâch,
I started from sleep and hurried you after,

und wart mir leider alsô gâch
and became to-me alas so hasty

daz ich der tavele vergaz.’
that I the tablet forgot.’

3705

der vischære sprach ‘waz hülfe uns daz
the fisherman said ‘what would-help us that

ob wir sî suochten? dâ sî lît,
if we it should-seek? where it lies,

dâ ist sî vûl vor maneger zît.

there is it rotten since many-a time.

ouwê, lieber herre mîn,

alas, dear lord mine,

3710 jâ stuont daz selbe hiuselîn

indeed stood the same little-house

nâch iu niht zwelf wochen

after you not twelve weeks

ê daz ez wart zebrochen:

before that it was broken:

ich hân ez allez verbrant,

I have it all burned,

beidiu dach unde want.

both roof and wall.

3715 ich truoc iu dô sô herten muot,

I bore toward-you then so hard spirit,

und wære ez gewesen guot

and had it been good

für wint ode für regen,

against wind or against rain,

irn wæret dâ inne niht gelegen.

you would-have there inside not lain.

dâ ê daz hiuselîn was,

where before the little-house was,

3720 dâ wahset nu umbederbe gras

there grows now useless grass

nezzeln unde unkrût.'

nettles and weeds.'

dô siufte der gotes trût,

then sighed the God's beloved,

got er im sô helfen bat,

God he himself so help bade,

ern kæme niemer von der stat,

he would-come never from the place,

ob er ir niht funde.

if he it not should-find.

3725

nu giengen sî zestunde

now went they at-once

mit gabeln und mit rechen,

with forks and with rakes,

und begunden nâher brechen

and began nearer to-break

daz unkrût und den mist.

the weeds and the dung.

nu erzeigte der dâ gnâdic ist

now showed he-who there gracious is

3730

an dem guoten Grêgôrjô

in the good Gregorius

ein vil grôzez zeichen dô,

a very great sign then,

wande er sîne tavel vant

for he his tablet found

als niuwe als sî von sîner hant

as new as-if it from his hand

füere der sî dâ worhte.

should-come who it there wrought.

3735

vröude unde vorhte

joy and fear

heten die daz sâhen.

had those-who that saw.

wande sî des jâhen,

for they of-that declared,

ditze wære ein sælic man.

this were a blessed man.

dâ enlugen sî niht an.

there lied they not in.

3740

The Pope and His Mother

XXI

On the way to Rome God feeds them, the bells ring of themselves, and Gregorius heals the sick. As pope he judges wisely and tempers justice with mercy. His mother comes to confess to him without recognizing him, and he reveals that he is her son and her husband. They live in holiness until death, and he wins heaven for his father too. Hartmann warns sinners not to count on such grace, and he asks the reader to pray for him.

Dô des morgens ir vart

When in-the morning their journey

gegen Rôme erhaben wart,

toward Rome raised was,

dô sâhen sî dicke under wegen

then saw they often on-the way

daz der gereite gotes segen

that the ready God's blessing

3745 disse reinen mannes pflac

of-this pure man took-care

mit vlîze naht unde tac.

with diligence night and day.

sî geruorte ûf der reise

them touched upon the journey

nie dehein wegefreise:

never any road-peril:

ir spîse erschôz in alsô wol

their food increased for-them so well

3750 daz ir vaz alle wege wâren vol,

that their vessels all ways were full,

swie vil sî drûz genâmen,

however much they thereout took,

unz sî ze Rôme kâmen.

until they to Rome came.

Von einen gnâden ich iu sage.

Of one grace I to-you tell.

vor der kunft drîer tage

before the coming by-three days

dô wart ze Rôme ein michel schal:

then was at Rome a great clamor:

sich begunden über al

themselves began over all

die glocken selbe liuten

the bells of-themselves to-ring

und kunden den liuten

and announced to-the people

daz ir rihtære

that their judge

schiere künftic wære.

soon coming were.

dâ kôs wîp unde man

there perceived woman and man

sîne heilecheit wol an.

his holiness well at.

sî fuoren gegen im sâ

they went toward him straightway

engegen Equitânjâ

toward Aquitaine

die drîe tageweide.

the three day-journeys.

sî hâten über heide

they had over heath

einen gotlîchen ruom:

a godly glory:

sî truogen ir heiltuom,

they carried their relics,

wüllîn unde barfuoz.

woolen-clad and barefoot.

3755

3760

3765

- 3770 er hôte willeclîchen gruoꝝ
he heard willing greeting
 an sînem antvange
at his reception
 mit lobe und mit gesange.
with praise and with song.
 Ez lâgen ûf der strâze
There lay upon the road
 siechen âne mâze:
sick-people without measure:
- 3775 die kômen dar ûf sînen trôst,
they came there upon his comfort,
 daz sî würden erlôst.
that they should-be released.
 der ernerte sîn segē
of-them saved his blessing
 harte manegen under wegen.
very many-a-one on-the way.
 swen er dâ beruorte,
whomever he there touched,
- 3780 dâ man in hin fuorte,
where one him thither led,
 sîn guot wille ode sîn hant,
his good will or his hand,
 sîn wort ode sîn gewant,
his word or his clothing,
 der wart dâ zestunt
he became there at-once
 von sînem kumber gesunt.
of his affliction sound.

Rôme diu mære

Rome the famous

3785

enpfie ir rihtære

received her judge

mit lachendem muote.

with laughing spirit.

daz kom ir zallem guote:

that came to-her for-all good:

wande ez enwart dâ ze stat

for there was there in place

nie bâbest gesat

never pope set

3790

der baz ein heilære

who better a healer

der sêle wunden wære.

of-the soul's wounds were.

Er kunde wol ze rehte leben,

He could well to right live,

wan im diu mâze was gegeben

for to-him the measure was given

von des heiligen geistes lêre.

by the holy spirit's teaching.

3795

des rehten huote er sêre.

of-the right guarded he sorely.

ez ist reht daz man behalte

it is right that one keep

deumüete in gewalte

humility in power

(dâ genesent die armen mite),

(there are-saved the poor with),

- 3800 und sol doch vrävelliche site
and shall yet bold manners
 durch die vorhte erzeigen
for the fear show
 und die mit rehte neigen
and those with right bend
 die wider dem rehten sint.
who against the right are.
 ob aber ein des tievels kint
if however a the devil's child
- 3805 durch die stôle niene tuo,
for the stole not-at-all do,
 dâ hoeret danne gewalt zuo.
there belongs then power to.
 des sint diu zwei gerihte guot:
therefore are the two judgments good:
 sî lêrent reht und slahent hôhen muot.
they teach right and strike high spirit.
 man sol dem sündære
one shall to-the sinner
- 3810 ringen sîne swære
lighten his grief
 mit senfter buoze,
with gentle penance,
 daz im diu riuwe suoze.
so-that to-him the rue sweeten.
 daz reht ist alsô swære,
the right is so heavy,
 swer dem sündære
whoever the sinner
- 3815 ze vaste wil nâch jagen,
too hard will after chase,
 dazn mac der lîp niht wol vertragen.
that can the body not well bear.

ob er genâde suochen wil,

if he grace seek will,

gât man im gâhes buoze vil,

(if)-gives one to-him hastily penance much,

vil lîhte ein man dâ von verzagt,

very likely a man there from loses-heart,

daz er sich aber got entsagt

so-that he himself again God renounces

3820

und wirt wider des tievels kneht.

and becomes again the devil's servant.

dâ von gêt gnâde für daz reht.

there from goes grace before the right.

sus kunde er rehte mâze geben

thus could he right measure give

über geistlîchez leben,

over spiritual life,

dâ mit der sündære genas

there with the sinner was-saved

3825

und der guote stæte was.

and the good constant was.

von sîner starken lêre

from his strong teaching

sô wuohs diu gotes êre

so grew the God's honor

vil harte stârlîche

very greatly strongly

in rœmischem rîche.

in Roman realm.

3830

Sîn muoter, sîn base, sîn wîp

His mother, his aunt, his woman

(diu driu heten einen lîp),

(the three had one body),

dô sî in Equitânjam

when she in Aquitaine

von dem bâbest vernam

of the pope heard

3835 daz er sô gar wære

that he so wholly were

ein trôst der sündære,

a comfort of-the sinners,

dô suochte sî in durch rât

then sought she him for counsel

umbe ir houbetmissetât,

about her capital-misdeed,

daz sî der sünden bürde

that she of-the sins' burden

3840 von im entladen würde.

by him unburdened should-become.

unde dô sî in gesach

and when she him saw

und im ir bihte vor gesprach,

and to-him her confession before spoke,

nu was dem guoten wîbe

now was to-the good woman

von des bâbestes lîbe

of the pope's person

3845 ein unkundez mære

an unknown tidings

daz er ir sun wære:

that he her son were:

ouch het sî an sich geleit

also had she on herself laid

die riuwe und die arbeit,

the rue and the hardship,

sît sî sich schieden beide,

since they themselves parted both,

daz ir der lîp von leide
so-that from-her the body from sorrow

3850

entwichen was begarwe
departed was wholly

an krefte und an varwe,
in strength and in color,

daz er ir niht erkande
so-that he her not recognized

unz sî sich im nande
until she herself to-him named

und daz lant Equitânjam.
and the land Aquitaine.

3855

dô er ir bihte vernam,
when he her confession heard,

dône bejach si im anders niht
then confessed she to-him otherwise nothing

niewan der selben geschiht
except the same story

diu im ouch ê was kunt:
which to-him also before was known:

dô erkande er zestunt,
then recognized he at-once,

3860

daz sî sîn muoter wære.
that she his mother were.

der guote und der gewære
the good and the true-one

der vröute sich ze gote,
he rejoiced himself toward God,

daz sî sînem gebote
that she to-his commandment

alsô verre under lac:
so far under lay:

3865

wande er sach wol daz sî pflac
for he saw well that she practiced

riuwe und rehter buoze.
rue and right penance.

mit willeclîchem gruoze
with willing greeting

enpfie er sîne muoter dô
received he his mother then

3870 und was des herzenlîchen vrô
and was of-that heartily glad

daz im diu sælde geschach
that to-him the fortune befell

daz er sî vor ir ende sach
that he her before her end saw

und daz er sî alten
and that he her aging

muose behalten
must keep

3875 und geistlîchen rât geben
and spiritual counsel give

über sêle und über leben.
over soul and over life.

Dannoch was ir daz unkunt,
Still was to-her that unknown,

gesach si in ie vor der stunt.
(that)-saw she him ever before the hour.

mit listen sprach er dô zuo ir
with cunning spoke he then to her

3880 'vrouwe, durch got, nu saget mir
'lady, for God, now tell me

habt ir sît iht vernomen
have you since at-all heard

war iuwer sun sî komen,
where your son be come,

weder er sî lebende ode tôt?’

whether he be living or dead?’

do ersiufte sî (des gie ir nôt),

then sighed she (of-that went to-her need),

sî sprach ‘herre, nein ich.

she said ‘lord, no I.

3885

ich weiz wol, er hât an sich

I know well, he has on himself

von riuwen solhe nôt geleit,

from rue such distress laid,

ichn verneme es rehte wârheit,

unless-I hear of-it right truth,

sone gloube ich niht daz er noch lebe.’

so believe I not that he still live.’

er sprach ‘ob daz von gotes gebe

he said ‘if that by God’s gift

3890

immer möhte geschehen

ever might happen

daz man in iuch lieze sehen,

that one him you should-let see,

nu saget wie, getriuwet ir doch

now tell how, trust you yet

ob ir in erkandet noch?’

whether you him would-recognize still?’

si sprach ‘mich entriege mîn sin,

she said ‘me unless-deceive my mind,

3895

ich erkande in wol, und sæhe ich in.’

I would-recognize him well, and should-see I him.’

Er sprach ‘nu saget des ich iuch bite,

He said ‘now tell what I you ask,

weder wære iu dâ mite

whether would-have to-you there with

liep ode leit geschehen,

joy or sorrow happened,

- 3900 ob ir in müeset sehen?’
if you him should-have-to see?’
- si sprach ‘ir muget wol nemen war,
she said ‘you may well take heed,
- ich hân mich bewegen gar
I have myself given-up wholly
- lîbes unde guotes,
of-body and of-goods,
- vröuden unde muotes
of-joys and of-spirit
- 3905 gelîch einem armen wîbe:
like a poor woman:
- mirn möhte ze disem lîbe
to-me could in this life
- dehein vröude mê geschehen,
no joy more happen,
- niewan diu müese ich in sehen.’
except that should I him see.’

Er sprach ‘sô gehabt iuch wol,
He said ‘so bear yourself well,

- 3910 wand ich iu vröude künden sol.
for I to-you joy announce shall.
- ez ist unlanc daz ich in sach
it is not-long that I him saw
- und daz er mir bî gote jach
and that he to-me by God declared
- daz er keinen vriunt hæte
that he no friend had
- ze triuwen und ze stæte
in faithfulness and in constancy
- 3915 lieberne danne iuwern lîp.’
dearer than your person.’
- ‘genâde herre,’ sprach daz wîp,
‘thanks lord,’ said the woman,

‘lebet er noch?’ ‘jâ er’. ‘nu wie?’

‘lives he still?’ ‘yes he’. ‘now how?’

‘er gehabt sich wol unde ist hie.’

‘he bears himself well and is here.’

‘mag ichn gesehen, herre?’

‘may I-him see, lord?’

‘jâ, wol: er ist unverre.’

‘yes, well: he is not-far.’

3920

‘herre, sô lât mich in sehen.’

‘lord, so let me him see.’

‘vrouwe, daz mac wol geschehen:

‘lady, that may well happen:

sît daz ir in sehen welt,

since that you him see will,

sô ist unnôt daz ir des twelt.

so is needless that you of-it delay.

Vil liebiu muoter, seht mich an:

Very dear mother, look me at:

3925

ich bin iuwer sun und iuwer man.

I am your son and your man.

swie grôz und swie swære

however great and however heavy

mîner sünden last wære,

my sins’ burden were,

des hât nu got vergezzen

of-that has now God forgotten

und hân alsus besezzen

and have thus possessed

3930

disen gewalt von gote.

this power from God.

ez kom von sînem gebote

it came from his commandment

daz ich her wart erwelt:

that I hither was chosen:

alsus hân ich im geselt

thus have I to-him yielded

3935 beidiu sêle unde lîp.'

both soul and body.'

sus wart daz gnâdelôse wîp

thus was the comfortless woman

ergetzet ir leides gar.

recompensed of-her sorrow wholly.

got santę sî wunderlîchen dar

God sent them wondrously there

ze vrôuden in beiden.

to joys to-them both.

3940 sus wârens ungescheiden

thus were-they unparted

unze an den gemeinen tôt.

until to the common death.

als ir Grêgôrjus gebôt

as her Gregorius commanded

und ir ze büezenne riet,

and to-her to atone counseled,

dô er von ir lande schiet,

when he from her land parted,

3945 mit lîbe und mit guote,

with body and with goods,

mit beitendem muote,

with waiting spirit,

daz hâte sî geleistet gar

that had she fulfilled wholly

sô daz ir niht dar an war.

so that to-her nothing there in was-lacking.

swaz sî ouch jâre sît vertriben

whatever they also of-years since spent

3950 sît sî ze Rôme ensamt beliben,

since they at Rome together remained,

diu wâren in beiden

those were to-them both

ze gote alsô bescheiden

toward God so allotted

daz sî nu iemer mêre sint

that they now ever more are

zwei ûz erweltiu gotes kint.

two out chosen God's children.

ouch erwarp er sînem vater daz

also won he for-his father that

daz er den stuol mit im besaz

that he the chair with him possessed

dem niemer vröude zergât:

for-which never joy passes-away:

wol im der in besezzen hât.

well for-him who it possessed has.

Bî disen guoten mæren

By these good tales

von disen sündæren,

of these sinners,

wie sî nâch grôzer schulde

how they after great guilt

erwurben gotes hulde,

won God's favor,

dâ ensol niemer an

there shall never on

dehein sündiger man

any sinful man

genemen bæsez bilde,

take evil example,

sî er gote wilde,

(if)-be he to-God wild,

3955

3960

3965

daz er iht gedenke alsô

that he at-all think so

‘nu wis du vrâvel unde vrô:

‘now be thou bold and glad:

wie soldest du verwâzen wesen?

how shouldst thou cursed be?

3970 sît daz dise sint genesen

since that these are saved

nâch ir grôzen meintât,

after their great evil-deed,

sô wirt dîn alsô guot rât:

so becomes of-thee so good remedy:

und ist daz ich genesen sol,

and (if)-is that I be-saved shall,

sô genise ich alsô wol.’

so am-saved I just-as well.’

3975 swen des der tiuvel schündet,

whomever to-that the devil urges,

daz er ûf den trôst sündet,

that he upon the comfort sins,

den hât er überwunden

him has he overcome

und in sînen gewalt gebunden:

and into his power bound:

und ist ouch sîn sünde kranc,

and (if)-is also his sin slight,

3980 sô kumt der selbe gedanc

so comes the same thought

mit tûsentvalter missetât,

with thousandfold misdeed,

und wirt sîn niemer mêre rât.

and becomes of-him never more remedy.

dâ sol der sündige man

there shall the sinful man

ein sælic bilde nemen an,

a blessed example take on,

swie vil er gesündet hât,

however much he sinned has,

daz sîn doch wirt guot rât,

that of-him yet becomes good remedy,

ob er die riuwe begât

if he the rue practices

und rehte buoze bestât.

and right penance undertakes.

Hartman, der sîn arbeit

Hartmann, who his toil

an diz buoch hât geleit

upon this book has laid

got und iu ze minnen,

for-God and for-you for love,

der gert dar an gewinnen

he desires there by to-win

daz ir im lât gevallen

that you him let please

ze lône von iu allen

as reward from you all

die ez hœren oder lesen,

who it bear or read,

daz sî im bittende wesen

that they for-him praying be

daz im diu sælde geschehe

that to-him the fortune befall

daz er iuch noch gesehe

that he you yet see

in dem himelrîche.

in the heaven-kingdom.

3985

3990

3995

- 4000 des sendet alle geliche
for-that send all alike
- disen guoten sündære
this good sinner
- ze boten umb unser swære,
as messenger for our grief,
- daz wir in disem ellende
that we in this exile
- ein alsô genislîch ende
a so saving end
- 4005 nemen als sî dâ nâmen.
take as they there took.
- des gestiure uns got. âmen.
of-that help us God. amen.
-

HARTMANN VON AUE

Büchlein

The Lament

The Prologue, and the Body's Complaint

I

Love rules everyone. A young man, Hartmann, loves a lady who will not accept him, and he keeps his grief hidden. His body turns on his heart, accuses it of faithlessness for ruling the body it lives in, and threatens to stab it. The heart's counsel set the body to serve this lady, and though all the world praises her, she repays the body's service with ill. Only its thoughts are free, and it blames the heart for keeping it bound to her.

Minne waltet grôzer kraft,

Love wields great power,

wan sî wirt sigehaft

for she becomes victorious

an tumben unde an wîsen,

over foolish and over wise,

an jungen unde an grîsen,

over young and over gray,

an armen unde an rîchen.

over poor and over rich.

gar gewalteclîchen

wholly mightily

betwanc sî einen jungelinc,

compelled she a youth,

daz er alliu sîniu dinc

that he all his things

muose in ir gewalt ergeben

bad-to into her power surrender

und nâch ir gebote leben,

and according-to her command live,

5

10

sô daz er ze mâze ein wîp
so that he in measure a woman

durch schoene sinne und durch ir lîp
for fair wits and for her body

minnen begunde.
to-love began.

dô sî im des niht gunde
when she to-him of-that not granted

15 daz er ir wære undertân
that he to-her were subject

(sî sprach er solte sî erlân),
(she said he should her spare),

doch versuochte erz zaller zît.
yet tried he-it at-all time.

disen kumberlîchen strît
this afflicting strife

entorste er nieman gesagen:
dared he no-one tell:

20 dar umbe wolt ern immer tragen,
there for would he-it ever bear,

ob er sî des erbæte
if he her of-that should-prevail-upon

daz sî sînen willen tæte,
that she his will should-do,

daz ez verswigen wære.
that it kept-silent were.

er klagete sîne swære
he lamented his grief

25 niwan in sînem muote
only in his spirit

und het in sîner huote,
and had in his keeping,

sô er beste kunde,
as he best could,

daz ez ieman befunde.

lest it anyone should-discover.

daz was von Owe Hartman,

that was of Aue Hartmann,

der ouch dirre klage began

who also this lament began

30

durch sus verswigen ungemach.

for thus kept-silent discomfort.

sîn lîp zuo sînem herzen sprach

his body to his heart spoke

‘Owê, herze unde sin,

‘Alas, heart and mind,

wærst dû iht anders denne ich bin,

wert thou at-all other than I am,

dû hætest wol versolt um mich

thou wouldst-have well deserved from me

35

daz ich klagete über dich

that I should-complain about thee

allen den ich des getrûwe

to-all whom I of-that trust

daz sî mîn schade gerûwe,

that them my harm rue,

daz sî mich ræchen an dir.

that they me should-avenge on thee.

und wære dar zuo state mir,

and were there to opportunity to-me,

40

zwære ich tæte dir den tôt

truly I would-do to-thee the death

und gulte dir alsolhe nôt

and would-repay thee such distress

die dû mir ofte bringest,

which thou to-me often bringest,

- wan dû mich leider twingest
for thou me alas compellest
- 45 mit dîner krefte swes dû wil:
with thy strength to-whatever thou wilt:
- wan des gewaltes ist sô vil
for of-the power is so much
- des dir an mir verlâzen ist
which to-thee over me granted is
- daz mir deheines mannes list
that to-me no man's cunning
- fride dâ vor mac gegeben
peace there before can give
- 50 ichn müeze in dîme gewalte leben.
unless-I must in thy power live.
- daz ich dem niht entwenken mac,
that I that not escape can,
- des gewinne ich manegen swæren tac:
of-that gain I many-a heavy day:
- wan dich wil niht genüegen
for thee will not satisfy
- swaz dû mir maht gefüegen
whatever thou to-me canst inflict
- 55 nâch gênder riuwe.
by-way-of going rue.
- daz ist ein untriuwe
that is a faithlessness
- sît dû in mir gehûset hâst
since thou in me housed hast
- und diu dinc an mir begâst
and the things on me committest
- diu under friunden missezement,
which among friends ill-befit,
- 60 wan sî mir freude gar benement.
for they from-me joy wholly take-away.

Zwâre ez ist dîn ungenist,

Truly it is thy ruin,

sât dû mir unnütze bist:

since thou to-me useless art:

lâz dich sîn niht gelüsten:

let thee of-it not lust:

dû bist under mînen brüsten

thou art under my breasts

vil vaste beslozen:

very fast locked:

du belîbests ungenozzen.

thou remainest-of-it unprofited.

geloube mir daz ich dir sage,

believe me what I to-thee say,

ê ich den kumber lenger trage,

before I the affliction longer bear,

daz ich mich an dir riche

that I myself on thee avenge

und ein mezzet in dich stiche

and a knife into thee stab

und belîbe mit dir tât.

and remain with thee dead.

daz ist mir bezzer danne ich nôt

that is to-me better than I distress

immer lîde âne danc.

forever suffer without thanks.

mir wær daz leben sô ze lanc.

to-me would-be the life so too long.

Dû bist weizgot vil betrogen.

Thou art God-knows much deceived.

ofte hât dû mir gelogen

often hast thou to-me lied

unz daz nû dîn übeler rât

until that now thy evil counsel

65

70

75

vil ungenislîchen hât

very ruinously has

verleitet mich armen lîp

misled me poor body

80 mit dîne gewalte an ein wîp.

with thy power to a woman.

Mich hiezen dîne sinne

Me bade thy wits

ir dienen umbe minne:

her serve for love:

dû zaltest mir ir güete vil,

thou toldest to-me her goodness much,

als der den andern triegen wil,

as he-who the other deceive will,

85 und wie wol ez mir ergienge

and how well it for-me would-go

ob sî mân genâde vienge.

if she of-me grace should-take.

jâ ist sî leider ze guot:

indeed is she alas too good:

daz ist daz mir den schaden tuot,

that is what to-me the harm does,

wan ich sîn niht geniezen mac.

for I of-it not enjoy may.

90 ich hân alsô manegen tac

I have so many-a day

von ir güete vil vernomen:

of her goodness much heard:

nû bin ichs an ein ende komen.

now am I-of-it to an end come.

sît sî rehte wart gewar
since she rightly became aware

daz mîn freude alsô gar
that my joy so wholly

an ir einer gnâde stêt,
on her alone grace stands,

sît engeruocht sî wiez mir gêt:
afterward cares-not she how-it for-me goes:

daz ist ein starker wîbes muot.
that is a hard woman's spirit.

ichn weiz wes sî mir niht ist guot.
I-not know why she to-me not is good.

Unz ich sî mînen muot versweic,
While I from-her my purpose concealed,

gein ir gruoze ich dicke neic
toward her greeting I often bowed

und het mich dô als einen man
and held me then as a man

dem ein wîp ir hulde gan.
to-whom a woman her favor grants.

dô wânde ich bezzern mîn heil:
then thought I to-better my weal:

do geviel mir daz wirser teil.
then fell to-me the worse part.

ich wânde mich ir næhte
I thought me to-her should-approach

swenn ich sî innen bræhte
when I her aware should-make

daz ich ûz al der werlt ein wîp
that I out-of all the world a woman

ze frowen über mînen lîp
as lady over my body

für sî hæte niht erkorn:
before her had not chosen:

95

100

105

- 110 **dâ mite hân ich sî verlorn:**
there with have I her lost:
- des genüzze ein man der sælde hât.**
of-that would-profit a man who fortune has.
- ir muot ze frömder wîse stât,**
her spirit to strange manner stands,
- mit übel giltet sî mir guot:**
with ill repays she me good:
- dâ ist daz reht niht wol behuot.**
there is the right not well guarded.
- 115 **hæte sî mich doch als ê,**
had she me yet as before,
- sô gerte ich allez gnâden mê:**
so would-desire I ever of-grace more:
- sît ich nû hân engolten**
since I now have paid-for
- des die geniezen solten**
what they profit should
- den nâch ir werken wol geschiht,**
to-whom according-to their works well befalls,
- 120 **sô wil ich mînes heiles niht.**
so will I of-my weal not.
- Friunt, wan deich die niht schelten sol**
Friend, except that-I her not reproach shall
- der al diu werlt sprichet wol,**
of-whom all the world speaks well,
- sô sagete ich ze mære**
so would-say I as tidings
- daz sî diu wirsest wære**
that she the worst were
- 125 **der ich ie künde gewan,**
of-whom I ever knowledge got,

wan sî mir ir guoten friunde erban
for she to-me her good friend begrudges

daz ich vil gar âne ir schaden
that I very wbolly without her harm

mîner swære wurde entladen,
of-my grief should-become relieved,

und mich mit dienste nâme
and me with service should-take

als guotem wîbe gezæme,
as good woman would-befit,

und mit urloube gedæhte an sî.
and with leave should-think on her.

nu ist der gedanc alsô frî
now is the thought so free

daz sî mir den niht wern mac,
that she to-me it not forbid can,

ichn sî ir heimlich allen tac
I be to-her intimate all day

als mit gedanken ein man
as with thoughts a man

einem wîbe beste kan.
to-a woman best can.

wan swaz mit werken mac ergân,
for whatever with deeds may come-about,

daz hân ich mit gedanke getân,
that have I with thought done,

daz doch ir êren wol gezimet:
which yet her honor well befits:

mîn muot im sîn niht fûrbaz nimet.
my spirit to-itself of-it not further takes.

daz ist doch mîn freude gar
that is yet my joy wbolly

daz ich gedenken getar:
that I think dare:

130

135

140

ir ist ouch niht mêre.

of-it is also not more.

nû wil sis haben êre

now will she-of-it have honor

145 daz ich von ir verderbe

that I through her perish

und gar an freude sterbe.

and wholly to joy die.

herze, daz machet dîn rât

heart, that makes thy counsel

der mich ir niht entwenken lât.

which me from-her not escape lets.

The Body's Complaint: the Lady's Silence

II

The body says it keeps silent where good women are praised, hoping to hear ill of its lady, but everyone names her the best. She is wholly good, if only she would change her mind toward it, and it would serve her in any peril. Women distrust men because so many deceive them and boast of it, and the body curses such men. Fearing it too will go unrewarded, it calls on death. It tells whoever asks only that its heart aches, and blames the heart for giving no counsel.

Sît ich niht guot verdienen sol

Since I not good earn shall

150 noch leide mac enphliehen wol,

nor sorrow can escape well,

sô gên ich dicke durch list

so go I often for cunning

dâ rede von guoten wîben ist

where talk of good women is

von den die sî erkennenent.

from those who them know.

sôs denne de besten nennent

when-they then the best name

und sagent waz diu tugende hât

and tell what she of-virtues has

155

und rüegent anderr missetât,

and blame other's misdeed,

sô swîge ich vil stille.

so keep-silent I very still.

und wære daz mîn wille

and were that my will

daz mich etswer an ir ræche

that me someone on her should-avenge

und ir iht arges spræche

and of-her anything of-evil should-speak

160

daz ich von ir vernæme

so-that I of her should-bear

daz wîbe missezæme,

what to-woman would-ill-befit,

etelîchiu mære

some tidings

daz sî mir unmære

that she to-me indifferent

und deich ir vîent müese sîn.

and that-I her enemy must be.

165

sô tuont sî niht den willen mîn,

so do they not the will mine,

wan sô hære ich niht wan einen munt,

for so hear I nothing but one mouth,

in sî niht bezzers wîbes kunt.

to-them be no better woman known.

dar an gewinne ich danne mê

there by gain I then more

wan daz mir wirt wirs dan ê.

but that to-me becomes worse than before.

170

ouch hete ich hie vor den sin,

also had I here before the sense,

des ich nû leider âne bin,

of-which I now alas without am,

swenne mirz dîn gwalt ervunde,

whenever to-me-it thy power should-discover,

daz ich ouch erkennen kunde

that I also know could

175 ein guot wîp als ein ander man.

a good woman as an other man.

got weiz wol daz ich niht enkan

God knows well that I not can

an ir erkennen wan guot,

in her recognize but good,

lieze sî den einen muot

should-leave she the one spirit

den sî wider mich nû lange hât.

which she against me now long has.

180 herze, nû sprich, waz ist dîn rât?

heart, now speak, what is thy counsel?

Dû hieze mich ir dienen ie:

Thou badest me her serve ever:

daz tæte ich gerne, wiste ich wie.

that would-do I gladly, should-know I how.

wære sî mir alsô guot,

were she to-me so good,

daz sî leider niht entuot,

which she alas not does,

185 daz sî spræche zuo mir

that she should-speak to me

‘dînen dienst wil ich von dir,’

‘thy service will I from thee,’

swie mir danne wære,

however to-me then were,

sanfte oder swære,

soft or heavy,

gezüge ez nâhe unz an den tût,

should-reach it near until to the death,

daz diuhte mich ein senftiu nôt,

that would-seem to-me a soft distress,

und wart nie freise sô getân

and was never peril so made

die dâ iemen solte bestân,

which there anyone should undertake,

ichn wær durch sî dar zuo bereit.

unless-I were for her there to ready.

owê daz sî mir niht seit

alas that she to-me not says

wes sî von mir geruochte,

what she from me should-desire,

daz sî mîne triwe versuochte!

that she my faithfulness should-try!

des mac doch leider niht sîn.

of-that may yet alas not be.

nû weist dû daz, herze mîn,

now knowest thou that, heart mine,

deichz lîde durch dîn gebot.

that-I-it suffer through thy command.

nu gedenke an den rîchen got

now think on the mighty God

und bewîse mich dâ bî,

and instruct me there by,

ob dû iht weist wâ von ez sî,

if thou at-all knowest where from it be,

ob ez mir noch etwaz gefrumet

whether it me yet somewhat profits

und mir ze allem guote kumet.

and to-me to all good comes.

190

195

200

- 205 nû sûme mich niht mêre:
now delay me not more:
- des hân ich frum und êre.
of-that have I profit and honor.
- Noch ist sî weizgot alsô guot,
Yet is she God-knows so good,
- erkante se rehte mînen muot,
should-recognize she rightly my spirit,
- und ob ich wære ein heiden,
and if I were a heathen,
- 210 von der kristenheit gescheiden,
from the Christendom parted,
- daz sî durch niemens ræte
that she through no-one's counsels
- sô sêre missetæte,
so sorely should-misdo,
- swenne sî bekante daz
whenever she perceived that
- daz ich ir noch nie vergaz
that I her yet never forgot
- 215 eines halben tages lanc,
of-a half day long,
- sî sagte mirs etlîchen danc.
she would-say to-me-for-it some thanks.
- Nû ist ez leider ein slac
Now is it alas a blow
- daz ein wîp niht wîzen mac
that a woman not know can
- wer sî mit triwen meinet.
who her with faithfulness means.

ouch ist in bescheinet

also is to-them shown

220

von mannen dicke solher list

by men often such cunning

der uns von rehte schade ist,

which to-us by right harm is,

swaz man in mit eiden ie gehiez,

whatever one to-them with oaths ever promised,

daz man des lützel wâr liez:

that one of-that little true left:

dâ von unsanfte ein wîp getar

there from ungently a woman dares

225

ir êre wâgen alsô gar

her honor stake so wholly

ûf solhe ungewisheit.

upon such uncertainty.

der zwîvel tuot den mannen leit,

the doubt does to-the men sorrow,

wan sî fürhtent deiz ergê

for they fear that-it go

alsô dâ vor vil maneger ê

as there before very many-a-one before

230

diu ouch ûf stæter minne wân

who also upon constant love's expectation

mit grôzer forhte het getân

with great fear had done

des ir geselle het begert,

what her companion had desired,

der sich lônës dûhte wert,

who himself of-reward seemed worthy,

und daz sîn wille denne ergie,

and that his will then came-about,

235

daz sî von im ze lône enphie
so-that she from him as reward received

vil ungeselleclîchen haz:
very uncompanionable hatred:

dô dûhte si ez verloren baz.
then seemed to-her it lost better:

wan daz ê was sîn flêhen,
for what before was his pleading,

240 daz verkêrte er an ein vêhen:
that turned he into a feuding:

wan in des dehein minne betwanc
for him to-that no love compelled

daz er sô sêre nâch ir ranc,
that he so sorely after her strove,

ez gebôt im ein böeser muot,
it commanded him an evil spirit,

als er noch vil manegem tuot
as it still very to-many-a-one does

245 durch swaches herzen lêre,
through base heart's teaching,

ûf ein betrogen êre,
upon a deceived honor,

daz er sichs gerüemen kunde.
that he himself-of-it boast could.

swie manc man ez befunde,
however many-a man it should-discover,

daz dûhte in êre unde heil.
that seemed to-him honor and weal.

daz er dem tiufel enteil

that he to-the devil as-share

250

sîn altherren werden müeze

to-his old-lord become may

(swie ich den fluoch gebüeze)

(however I the curse atone)

und alle sîne gelîchen,

and all his likes,

der arme zuo dem rîchen!

the poor-one with the rich-one!

sî sîn tôd oder leben,

be they dead or living,

255

ich wil sî ir meister geben,

I will them their master give,

daz er sîne knehte

that he his servants

hæne wol nâch rehte,

shame well according-to right,

und got in beneme den trôst

and God from-them take the comfort

daz si immer werden erlôst

that they ever be released

260

von der helle grunde.

from the hell's ground.

swaz ich des segens kunde,

whatever I of-the blessing could,

des wære ich gerne ir betman,

of-that would-be I gladly their prayer-man,

wan ich ir lônnes in wol gan.

for I of-their reward to-them well grant.

265 Sîn müeze nimmer werden rât,
Of-him may never become remedy,

swer den site erhaben hât
whoever the custom raised has

bî dem sô maneger bilde nimet
by which so many-a-one example takes

daz in des valsches wol gezimet
that to-him of-the falsehood well befits

daz er sich dunket rîche
that he himself seems rich

270 sô er ein wîp beswîche
when he a woman deceives

und ob er sî mac betriegen.
and if he her can cheat.

der vordes nie gelernte liegen,
he-who before never learned to-lie,

der kan ez danne harte wol
he can it then very well

sô er ein wîp beswîchen sol:
when he a woman deceive shall:

275 er heizetz eine behendekeit.
he calls-it a cleverness.

daz in got gebe leit!
that to-them God give sorrow!

sî wendent werltwünne vil,
they turn-aside world-delight much,

von minne manec süeze spil.
of love many-a sweet play.

diu wîp sint dâ von verzaget,
the women are there from disheartened,

280 und swaz in ieman gesaget,
and whatever to-them anyone says,

des swerent sî wol einen eit
of-that swear they well an oath

ez wære gar ein lügelicheit,
it were wholly a lie,

und lântz dâ von beliben.
and let-it there from remain.

daz schadet uns an den wîben,
that harms us with the women,

daz maneger âne lôn bestât
that many-a-one without reward stands

der in doch wol gedienet hât.
who to-them yet well served has.

Des selben hœre ich alle tage
Of-the same hear I all days

vil maneges mannes herzenklage
very many-a man's heart-lament

der doch niht tiurre möhte sîn.
who yet not dearer could be.

des kreftegônt die sorgen mîn,
of-that grow-strong the cares mine,

wan sô fürht ich daz sî mirz ouch tuo.
for so fear I that she to-me-it also do.

nû kum, tô, ez ist niht ze fruo:
now come, death, it is not too early:

wan swenne ich denke dar an
for whenever I think there on

waz ich freude ie gewan,
what I joy ever got,

die leschent sich begarwe
they extinguish themselves wholly

und wandelt sich mîn varwe
and changes itself my color

unde erzücket mich ein muot,
and seizes me a spirit,

285

290

295

der mir harte unsanfte tuot,

which to-me very ungently does,

gæhes als ein donerslac,

suddenly as a thunderclap,

300 daz ich niht rehte wizzen mac

that I not rightly know can

waz oder wie mir ist geschehen

what or how to-me is happened

od wes ich wider den sol jehen

or of-what I to him shall declare

der mir denne als nâhn ist bî

who to-me then as near is by

daz er mich frâget waz mir sî:

that he me asks what to-me be:

305 dem ensag ich ouch niht mê

to-him say I also not more

wan 'selle, mirst im herzen wê'

but 'comrade, to-me-is in-the heart woe.'

Daz tuon ich denne durch den list

That do I then for the cunning

daz iemen wizze waz mir ist:

lest anyone know what to-me is:

wan ich getar nieman sagen

for I dare to-no-one tell

310 'daz herze hiez michz eine tragen.'

'the heart bade me-it alone bear.'

daz ist mîn aller meister slac.

that is my of-all chief blow.

ichn weiz wes ich dir danken mac:

I-not know for-what I thee thank may:

wan ich den man wol funde

for I the man well would-find

der mir gerâten kunde,

who me counsel could,

getorste ich râtes frâgen.

should-dare I for-counsel ask.

315

daz ich doch mînen mâgen

that I yet to-my kinsmen

mîniu leit niht klagen sol,

my sorrows not lament shall,

herze, dar an tuost dû niht wol,

heart, there in dost thou not well,

sît ouch dû mir niht râtes gîst.

since also thou to-me no counsel givest.

sô grîfe ich dicke dâ dû list

so grope I often where thou liest

320

und kœm dirs gerne ze klage:

and would-come to-thee-of-it gladly to lament:

so ist alsô guot daz ichz verdage,

so is so good that I-it keep-silent,

wan sô verst dû dar inne

for so farest thou there inside

(daz heize ich unminne)

(that call I unlove)

vor freuden als ein vogellîn.

for joys like a birdling.

325

nû wie möhtest du ungetriwer sîn?

now how couldst thou more-faithless be?

wan ich solt zuo dir haben fluht:

for I should to thee have refuge:

und wære ez niht ein unzuht,

and were it not a discourtesy,

ich schrire wâfen über dich.

I would-cry to-arms over thee.

nû warumbe tœtest dû mich?

now why killest thou me?

330

The Body's Complaint: the Heart's Tyranny

III

The body says its cheer is hollow, and its mood rises like a ground swell on a calm sea. It would rather die with honor than live under the heart's rule, and it begs the heart to end their feud and govern it kindly. It asks whether the heart, lying in its breast like a kernel in a shell, is truly spared its pain, since weather that harms the shell harms the kernel, and water in a kettle on the embers must boil.

Got hât mir leider gegeben

God has to-me alas given

mit dir ein unnütze leben,

with thee a useless life,

wan daz ichz wol helen kan.

except that I-it well hide can.

ich bin ein freudelôser man,

I am a joyless man,

335 wan mich des tages unmanege zît

for me of-the day not-many-a time

diu selbe nôt vrî gât.

the same distress free gives.

sô aber sî mich denne lâ

when however it me then leaves

(daz leider selten ergât)

(which alas seldom comes-about)

unde ich mich erbiute

and I myself offer

340 ze freuden durch die liute,

to joys for the people,

sô hât leider mîn schimph

so has alas my jest

deheiner slahte gelimph,

of-no kind fitness,

wan er mir niht von herzen gât.

for it to-me not from heart goes.

mîn schimph mir alsô ane stât

my jest me so on stands

daz alle die beginnent jehen

that all those begin to-say

345

die mich ê habent gesehen,

who me before have seen,

sô ich als ungefüege bin,

when I so ungainly am,

ich habe verwandelt den sin

I have changed the mind

und ich sî worden unfruoet.

and I be become unwise.

sone wizzen sî waz ez mir tuot

so-not know they what it to-me does

350

und daz sich moviert mîn muot

and that itself moves my spirit

rehte als des meres fluot.

just as the sea's flood.

sô daz der ober wint verlât

when that the upper wind leaves-off

und ez mit ganzen ruowen stât

and it with whole rest stands

und dar ûf guot ze wesen ist,

and there upon good to be is,

355

sô kumet ez lihte in kurzer frist

so comes it easily in short time

daz sich beweget der grunt

that itself moves the ground

(daz ist allen den wol kunt

(that is to-all those well known

die dâ mite gewesen sint)

who there with been are)

360 und hebet sich ûf von grunde ein wint:

and raises itself up from ground a wind:

daz heizent sî selpwege

that call they ground-swell

und machet grôze ûndeslege

and makes great wave-blows

und hât vil manne den tôt gegeben

and has to-very-many men the death given

ze böesem wehsel für daz leben

in evil exchange for the life

365 und vil manegen vesten kiel

and very many-a strong keel

versenket in des meres giel.

sunk into the sea's gulf:

Dem glîchet sich daz leben mîn.

To-that likens itself the life mine.

swenn ich mit freuden wæne sîn,

when I with joys think to-be,

sô rüerent mich die sorgen

so touch me the cares

370 die ich dâ trage verborngen,

whiche I there carry bidden,

und siufte ûf von grunde

and sigh up from ground

mit lachendem munde,

with laughing mouth,

und truobent mir diu ougen.

and dim for-me the eyes.

der rede ist unlougen,

of-the speech is no-denying,

wan deiz unmanlich wære,

but that-it unmanly were,

weinen ich niht verbære.

weeping I not would-forbear.

Mir wirt aber sus sô wê

To-me becomes however thus so woe

daz ich bî den liuten mê

that I by the people more

niht beliben getar.

not remain dare.

sô gên ich alters eine dar

so go I quite alone there

dâ niemen ist wan mîn

where no-one is but me

(ich müese ir aller spot sîn),

(I would-have-to of-them all mockery be),

unz mich diu swære verlât

until me the grief leaves

diu mich dâ vor begriffen hât.

which me there before seized has.

Herze, wærest dû ein man

Heart, wert thou a man

(des mir got niene gan)

(which to-me God not-at-all grant)

und hete ich dir den vater erslagen

and had I to-thee the father slain

(daz unsanfte iemen mac vertragen)

(which hardly anyone can bear)

und alle dîne friunt benomen,

and all thy friends taken,

375

380

385

390 ez wær mich gnuoc tiur ane komen:

it were to-me enough dearly on come:

wan dû mir alle gnâde werest

for thou to-me all grace deniest

und mich alles des beherest

and me of-all that deprivest

daz freude geheizen mac.

whicb joy called may-be.

nû muoz ich dulden dînen slac

now must I endure thy blow

395 und leben mit solher swære

and live with such grief

daz mir bezzer wære

that to-me better were

mit êren genomen der tô

with honor taken the death

denn als unendehaftiu nô

than so endless distress

dâ dû mich, herze, in hâst brâht.

where thou me, heart, in hast brought.

400 durch waz hâst dû dirs erdâht

for what hast thou for-thyself-it devised

daz dû mich alsô wellest twelen

that thou me so wilt delay

daz dû mich lebenden mügest quelen?

that thou me living mayest torture?

Möhte ich nû wizen daz

Might I now know that

wâ von ich dînen haz

where from I thy hatred

405 von êrste gearnet hæte,

at first earned had,

vil gerne ich dich bæte
very gladly I thee would-ask

daz dû ez durch got verkürest
that thou it for God shouldst-forgo

unde uns beide niht verlürest:
and us both not shouldst-destroy:

wan ez dir schaden beginnet
for it to-thee harm begins

swenn dir mîn zerinnet.
when to-thee of-me runs-out.

wer sol den strît nû scheiden
who shall the strife now decide

under uns beiden?
between us both?

wan tuoz durch gotes êre
but do-it for God's honor

und rich dich niht ze sêre.
and avenge thyself not too sorely.

habe ich dir iht getân,
(if)-have I to-thee at-all done,

des lâz mich dir ze buoze stân
for-that let me to-thee in penance stand

und rihte selbe über mich:
and judge thyself over me:

sô êrest dû dich.
so honorest thou thyself.

Dû maht mich gerne enphâhen.
Thou mayest me gladly receive.

lâ dir niht versmâhen
let thee not scorn

mîn dienst und mîne friuntschaft,
my service and my friendship,

410

415

420

und twinc mich mit solher kraft

and compel me with such force

und mit solhen dingen

and with such things

diu ich müge volbringen:

whiche I may carry-out:

425 sô diene ich dir als ich sol

so serve I thee as I should

und kumt uns beiden ouch wol.

and comes for-us both also well.

Nû bin ich gar versêret,

Now am I wholly wounded,

daz heil ist mir verkêret

the weal is for-me turned

an ungehôrten dingen:

in unheard-of things:

430 des muoz mich sorge twingen.

for-that must me care compel.

freude soltest dû mir geben:

joy shouldst thou to-me give:

nû leidest dû mir daz leben

now makest-hateful thou to-me the life

und erbanst mir daz ich frô sî.

and grudgest me that I glad be.

doch muoz mich immer dâ bî

yet must me ever there by

435 die wîle ich lebe wunder nemen,

the while I live wonder take,

und wolt ez gerne vernemen

and would it gladly hear

von dir, trût mîn herze,

from thee, dear my heart,

ob dich mîn smerze

whether thee my pain

iedoch sô gar vergebene stê

yet so wholly in-vain stand

daz dir dâ von niht werde wê.

that to-thee there from not become woe.

440

des torste ab ich nimer gefrâgen,

of-that dared however I never ask,

wan sîn mohte dich betrâgen:

for of-it might thee weary:

sus reizest dû mich dâ zuo

thus urgest thou me there to

beide spâte unde fruô,

both late and early,

wan daz ichs durch daz gefrâget han

except that I-of-it for that asked have

445

daz ich gedenke dar an

that I think there on

daz dû von schulden sanfte lebest

that thou by rights softly livest

und under mînen brüsten swebest

and under my breasts boverest

als der kerne under der schalen:

as the kernel under the shell:

ich mag uns wol zesamen zalen.

I may us well together count.

450

Diu nuz diu an dem boume stât,

The nut which on the tree stands,

swaz wetters sî ane gât,

whatever of-weather it at goes,

daz nimt diu schal über sich:

that takes the shell over itself:

wan daz ist wol billich

for that is well fitting

455 daz sî dem kernen fride ber

that it for-the kernel peace bear

die wîle sî dâ ûzen wer

the while it there outside defend

und daz sî im vor sî.

and that it for-it before be.

doch ist der kerne niht gar frî:

yet is the kernel not wholly free:

witert ez der schalen als ez sol,

(if)-weathers it for-the shell as it should,

460 dâ von gedîht der kerne wol:

there from thrives the kernel well:

swelch weter der schalen ouch wê tuot,

whatever weather to-the shell also woe does,

daz ist dem kernen kein guot,

that is for-the kernel no good,

wan er muoz sîn ouch engelten:

for it must for-it also pay:

daz triuget ouch vil selten.

that deceives also very seldom.

465 Der einen kezzel an die gluot

He-who a kettle to the embers

vollen wazzers getuot,

full-of water puts,

ob erz dar an gefrœret,

if he-it there on freezes,

daz ist ungehœret:

that is unbeard-of:

wan ez diu hitze niht erlât

for it the heat not spares

470 diu ez von dem kezzel an gât,

which it from the kettle at goes,

ezn walle dar inne.

unless-it boil there inside.

von eteswiu ich sô brinne,

from something I so burn,

swie daz immer müge komen.

however that ever may come.

daz het ich lieber vernomen,

that would-have I rather heard,

sît daz dû mitten in mir lîst,

since that thou amid in me liest,

ob dû des schaden sicher sîst

whether thou of-the harm safe art

daz er dich niht sol twingen.

that it thee not shall compel.

bî disen zwein dingen

by these two things

sô nim ich dicke bilde:

so take I often example:

doch ist ez mir noch wilde

yet is it to-me still strange

wie ez dar umbe stê.

how it there about stands.

der selbe zwîvel tuot mir wê,

the same doubt does to-me woe,

herze, als dû vil wol weist.

heart, as thou very well knowest.

waz wirretz dir ob dû mirz seist?’

what troubles-it thee if thou to-me-it sayest?’

475

480

The Heart's Answer

IV

The heart tells the body to stop its mockery. The body acts like a guilty man who hurries to court to accuse the innocent. The heart knows nothing of the world except what the eyes report, so the eyes are to blame. It has counseled only good, and chose this lady because none is better. Love demands hardship, constancy, bounty, and courage, and the heart's burden is heavier than the body's.

485 'Lîp, ich wil ez gerne sagen,
'Body, I will it gladly tell,
wan ich möht ouch ze lange dagen.
for I might also too long keep-silent.

lîp, ich bite dich durch got
body, I ask thee for God

daz dû lâzest dînen spot
that thou leave thy mockery

und gebiut dînem munde
and command thy mouth

490 hie ze dirre stunde
here at this hour

daz er stille gedage
that it still be-silent

unde lâze sîne klage
and leave its lament

eim man dem ir nôt gê.
to-a man to-whom of-it need go.

mir tuot dîn lûrzen vil wê,
to-me does thy deceit very woe,

495 dû tuost mir maneger slahte leit.
thou dost to-me of-many kind sorrow.

ez ist et wâr daz man mir seit,
it is just true what one to-me says,

swâ sô der schade sî,
wherever so the harm be,

dâ wone der spot vil ofte bî.
there dwells the mockery very often by.

daz ist an mir wol worden schîn:
that is in me well become evident:

daz müeze dâ mite sîn.
that must there with be.

500

Dû tuost als der schuldec man
Tbou dost as the guilty man

der sich wol ûz nemen kan.
who himself well out take can.

alsô er den schaden getuot,
when he the harm does,

sô lêret in sîn karger muot
so teaches him his crafty spirit

daz im ouch dicke frumet,
what to-him also often profits,

505

daz er ê ze hove kumet.
that he first to court comes.

sîn schulde kan er wol verdagen
his guilt can he well keep-silent

und beginnet über jenen klagen
and begins about the-other to-complain

dem er den schaden hât getân.
to-whom he the harm has done.

der muoz im dan ze buoze stân.
he must to-him then in penance stand.

510

dâ von gênt den reinen man
there from go the innocent man

danne zwêne schaden an:
then two harms at:

er gniuzet sîn unschulde

he profits-from his innocence

daz im sînes herren hulde

that to-him his lord's favor

515 ze sînem schaden wirt verseit.

to his harm becomes refused.

dem glîchet sich daz mîn leit.

to-that likens itself the my sorrow.

Sît ich kumber von dir trage,

Since I affliction from thee bear,

liezest dû joch dîne klage

shouldst-leave thou even thy lament

und dîn üppigen drô,

and thy extravagant threat,

520 mich diuhte niht ich wære frô.

me would-seem not I were glad.

ine weiz war umbe dû ez lâst,

I-not know what for thou it leavest,

sît dû ez gesprochen hâst

since thou it spoken hast

dû wellest dich an mir rechen

thou wilt thyself on me avenge

unde ein mezzter in mich stechen?

and a knife into me stab?

525 daz het ich vil wol versolt:

that had I very well deserved:

wan dû mir daz gelouben solt,

for thou me that believe shalt,

wær ich gewaltec über dich

were I powerful over thee

sô dû bist über mich,

as thou art over me,

daz ich hende hæte,

that I hands had,

dîn leben wære unstæte,

thy life were unsteady,

ich tæte dir vil schiere schîn

I would-make to-thee very soon evident

daz ich unschuldec welle sîn

that I innocent will be

des kumbers den ich von dir hân:

of-the affliction which I from thee have:

der müese dir ze leide ergân.

it would-have-to thee to sorrow come.

Dû gihst dîn kumber sî mîn rât.

Thou sayest thy affliction be my counsel.

dû weist wol wiez dar umbe stât,

thou knowest well how-it there about stands,

daz ich sô vil niht wizzen mac

that I so much not know can

wenn ez sî naht oder tac.

when it be night or day.

ich erkenne übel noch guot,

I know ill nor good,

ich bin frô noch ungemuot,

I am glad nor ill-spirited,

wan als mich von dir wirt ane brâht.

but as me by thee is on brought.

dû hâst dich der rede niht wol bedâht,

thou hast thyself of-the speech not well bethought,

daz dû mich dar umbe sprichest an

that thou me there about speakest to

des ich schulde nie gewan.

of-which I guilt never got.

530

535

540

- 545 Enblant ez dînen ougen,
 Charge it to-thy eyes,
 wan daz ist âne lougen
 for that is without denial
 dû habest sî dâ zuo
 thou have them there to
 daz sî spâte unde fruo
 that they late and early
 übel unde guot besehen
 ill and good look-over
- 550 und mir ân mînen danc spehen
 and for-me without my will spy
 swaz mir der dinge ist erkant:
 whatever to-me of-the things is known:
 durch daz hân ich sî genant
 for that have I them named
 des herzen spehære.
 the heart's spies.
 ir spehens ich wol enbære.
 of-their spying I well would-do-without.
- 555 swaz in der werlte geschiht,
 whatever in the world happens,
 des enweiz ich anders niht
 of-that know I otherwise nothing
 wan als dû mirz enbiutst bî in.
 but as thou to-me-it sendest-word by them.
 dar under hân ich schœnen sin,
 there among have I fair sense,
 des ich wider dich engolten hân,
 for-which I against thee paid have,
- 560 des dû mich geniezen soldest lân:
 of-which thou me profit shouldst let:
 sît dû mich ze râte erwelet hât,
 since thou me as counsel chosen hast,

unde mich des niht erläst,

and me of-that not sparest,

sô weist dû wol daz ich dich nie

so knowest thou well that I thee never

bæsiu dinc geminnen lie.

evil things love let.

ze guoten dingen ich dir riet,

to good things I thee counseled,

von allem valsche ich dich schiet.

from all falsehood I thee parted.

dar umbe dulde ich dinen haz.

there about endure I thy hatred.

doch wil ich gerne liden daz

yet will I gladly suffer that

swaz mir dâ von geschehen sol:

whatever to-me there from happen shall:

ich rât dir nimmer niht wan wol.

I counsel thee never anything but well.

Mîner schulde ist ouch niht mêre

Of-my guilt is also not more

wan daz ich dîn êre

but that I thy honor

dir râte, swaz ich guotes weiz,

to-thee counsel, whatever I of-good know,

und mich ie dâ wider fleiz

and myself ever there against strove

dar an dû hætest missetân,

there in thou hadst misdane,

daz dû daz muosest durch mich lân.

that thou that must through me leave.

mîn lêre muost dû durch mich liden,

my teaching must thou through me suffer,

wol tuon unde bôsheit mîden.

well do and wickedness avoid.

565

570

575

rich dich swie dich dunket guot:

avenge thyself however to-thee seems good:

580 ich rât dir niht wan rehten muot.

I counsel thee nothing but right spirit.

Du verwîzest mir daz, böeser lîp,

Thou reproachest to-me that, evil body,

daz ich dir riet an daz wîp.

that I thee counseled toward the woman.

daz hân ich weizgot getân:

that have I God-knows done:

wan ich weiz daz wol âne wân,

for I know that well without doubt,

585 als mir mîn selbes sin verjach,

as to-me my own mind declared,

do ich sî durch dîniu ougen sach,

when I her through thy eyes saw,

daz niht bezzers möhte sîn.

that nothing better could be.

ich riet dirz durch den willen dîn:

I counseled to-thee-it for the will thine:

war umbe wîzest dû mir?

what for reproachest thou me?

590 wie moht ich baz gebieten dir?

how could I better command thee?

nû wis dar nâch veile:

now be there after ready:

ez muoz dir komen von heile

it must to-thee come from weal

ob sî dîn dienst twinget

if her thy service compels

daz dir an ir gelinget

so-that for-thee in her succeeds

dû wirst der sælegiste man

thou becomest the most-blessed man

595

der in der werlt ie lieb gewan.

who in the world ever joy got.

dû maht dich gerne wâgen

thou mayest thyself gladly venture

an nütze râtfrâgen

on useful counsel-asking

nâch alsolher lêre

after such teaching

dâ von dû immer mêre

there from thou ever more

600

von schulden muost geêret sîn,

by rights must honored be,

dû und ich daz herze dîn.

thou and I the heart thine.

Dû klagest âne nôt ze vil.

Thou lamentest without need too much.

jane ist ez niht ein kindes spil,

indeed is it not a child's game,

swer daz mit rehte erwerben sol

whoever that with right win shall

605

daz im von wîbe geschihet wol.

that to-him from woman befalls well.

swer ahtet ûf die minne,

whoever heeds upon the love,

der darf wol schoener sinne

he needs well fair senses

und swer ir lère wil phlegen

and whoever her teaching will take-care-of

610 der muoz lâzen under wegen

he must leave on-the way

swaz anders heizet denne guot

whatever else is-called than good

und minnen rehtes mannes muot.

and love right man's spirit.

dâ gehœret arbeit zuo

there belongs hardship to

beide spâte unde fruio

both late and early

615 und daz man vil gedenke an sî.

and that one much think on her.

minne machet niemen frî

love makes no-one free

ze grôzem gemache.

to great comfort.

daz sint die selben sache

those are the same things

dâ man ir mite dienen sol,

where one her with serve shall,

620 wan sî lônet vaste wol.

for she rewards greatly well.

Swer ir ingesinde wesen wil,
Whoever her household-member be will,

der darf solhes muotes vil
he needs of-such spirit much

daz er gedenke dar zuo
that he think there to

wie er mêre guotes getuo
how he more good do

dann er dâ von gespreche:
than he there of speak:

625

sîn triwe durch niemen breche:
his faithfulness for no-one break:

milte unde manheit
bounty and manhood

ist ir ze dienste niht leit:
is to-her in service not grievous:

sînen lîp habe er schône
his body keep he fairly

nâch der minne lône:
after the love's reward:

630

er sî zûhteclîchen balt.
he be courteously bold.

die tugent hân ich dir vor gezalt
the virtues have I to-thee before told

dâ mite dû erwerben solt
there with thou win shalt

daz dir die frowen wesen holt.
that to-thee the ladies be devoted.

Dû muost mit herten dingen
Thou must with hard things

635

nâch ir hulden ringen.
for their favor strive.

beide sêle unde lîp

both soul and body

muoz man wâgen durch diu wîp,

must one venture for the women,

swer sô lônës von in gert:

whoever so of-reward from them desires:

640 er ist sîn anders ungewert.

he is of-it otherwise ungranted.

Daz ist alsô her komen.

That is so hither come.

ouch hâst dû daz wol vernomen,

also hast thou that well heard,

dîn herze wendet dich sîn niht.

thy heart turns thee from-it not.

swaz ouch dir lasters geschiht,

whatever also to-thee of-reproach befalls,

645 des darft dû an mich niht jehen:

of-that needst thou against me not declare:

wan ich lâze dich wol sehen,

for I let thee well see,

wilt dû sîn haben mînen rât,

(if)-wilt thou of-it have my counsel,

daz dir nimmer missegât,

that for-thee never goes-amiss,

dirn geschehe alliu êre.

unless-to-thee befall all honor.

650 dû klagest von grôzem sêre

thou lamentest of great pain

und lebest müelîchen:

and livest toilsomely:

jane mac sich niht gelîchen

indeed can itself not compare

unser kumber den wir tragen.

our affliction which we bear.

dû maht wol swîgen, lâz mich klagen.

thou mayest well keep-silent, let me lament.

The Heart's Answer: the Flower in the Snow

V

The heart says the body has sleep and pastimes to forget its cares, while the heart never rests from planning how to win the lady. Fortune must be hunted and bought with affliction. The heart calls the body a sluggard and compares itself to a flower held down by snow and frost, though the flower at least has spring to hope for. It regrets ever thinking of giving up virtue, and it resolves to strive for honor.

Dîner sorge ist nie sô vil,

Of-thy care is never so much,

sî wære wider die mîne ein spil,

it would-be against the mine a game,

ob ez alsô drumbe wære

if it so thereabout were

daz sî mich dûhte swære.

that it me seemed heavy.

daz ab ich vil lîdeclîchen tuo,

that however I very patiently do,

daz hilfet mich dar zuo

that helps me there to

und tuot mir mîner sorgen rât:

and does for-me of-my cares remedy:

wan mîn muot alsô stât

for my spirit so stands

daz mich niht genüegen mac,

that me nothing content can,

655

660

ichn flîze mich naht unde tac

unless-I strive myself night and day

665 wie ich dir daz gefüege

how I for-thee that arrange

des dich von rehte genüege

with-which thee by right satisfy

durch unser beider êre.

for our both honor.

nû waz solt uns freude mêre?

now what should to-us joy more?

und enphienge dich daz selbe wîp,

and should-receive thee the same woman,

670 sô wærestû ein sælec lîp.

so wouldst-thou-be a blessed body.

Swaz kumbers dich des an gât,

Whatever affliction thee of-that on goes,

des tuost dû wol guoten rât.

of-that dost thou well good remedy.

dû hâst kurzwîle vil,

thou hast pastime much,

der ich dir manege zelen wil,

of-which I to-thee many tell will,

675 dâ mite dû sîn vergezzen maht.

there with thou of-it forget canst.

mit slâfe ergetzet dichs diu naht:

with sleep compensates thee-for-it the night:

die ruowest dû gar, daz ist wâr

that retest thou wholly, that is true

(daz heize ich daz halbe jâr):

(that call I the half year):

den tac vertribst dû ringe

the day passest thou lightly

680 mit manegem lieben dinge:

with many-a dear thing:

dû hærest singen unde sagen,

thou hearest singing and telling,

dû maht beizen unde jagen,

thou canst hawk and hunt,

spilen unde schiezen:

play and shoot:

wie solte dich verdriezen

how should thee irk

tanzen unde springen?

dancing and leaping?

dû maht wol sanfte ringen.

thou canst well gently wrestle.

der dinge ist tûsent stunt mê,

of-the things is a-thousand times more,

diu lânt dir selten werden wê:

which let to-thee seldom become woe:

dû wirst von kurzwîle frô.

thou becomest from pastime glad.

sô enist mir ninder sô:

so is to-me nowhere so:

den âbent und den morgen

the evening and the morning

ringe ich ie mit sorgen,

struggle I ever with cares,

da'nzwischen über alle zît

there-in-between over all time

kumber hât mich âne strît.

affliction has me without dispute.

Sô dû an dem bette list

When thou on the bed liest

und aller sorgen verphlîst,

and of-all cares takest-no-beed,

685

690

695

sô wache ich und ahte

so wake I and ponder

vil harte maneger slahte

very greatly of-many kind

wie ich ez bringe dar zuo

how I it bring there to

700 daz sî dînen willen getuo,

that she thy will do,

und bin ir allez nâhen bî.

and am to-her ever near by.

doch ich hie heime in dir sî,

though I here at-home in thee be,

ich kume nimmer von ir.

I come never from her.

dâ von ist ez daz sî dir

there from is it that she to-thee

705 erschînet in dem troume.

appears in the dream.

nû nim der rede goume.

now take of-the speech heed.

Swaz dir troumende geschiht,

Whatever to-thee dreaming happens,

daz enist ouch anders niht

that is also other nothing

wan mîn eines arbeit.

but my alone hardship.

710 sô sprichest dû dû habest leit:

so sayest thou thou have sorrow:

owê wie sælec dû bist!

alas how blessed thou art!

für sorgen kan ich keinen list

against cares know I no cunning

wan einen, der ist ouch guot,

but one, it is also good,

daz ich allen mînen muot

that I all my spirit

ûf anders niht gewendet hân

upon other nothing turned have

wan waz ich der dinge müge begân

but what I of-the things may undertake

dâ von dû liebe gewinnest.

there from thou joy gainest.

arbeit ist mir daz minnest.

hardship is to-me the least.

Doch swie vil mînes schaden ist,

Yet however much of-my harm is,

des dû alles sicher bist

of-which thou wholly safe art

(wan daz dû mich sîn niht erlâst

(except that thou me of-it not sparest

mit üppekeit die du dâ hâst),

with frivolity which thou there hast),

mich hœret nie kein man klagen,

me hears never any man lament,

und wolt in dulteclichen tragen

and would it patiently bear

durch unser beider êre:

for our both honor:

wan mîn ahte ist niht mêre

for my concern is not more

wan wiech dir müge gefüegen

but how-I for-thee may arrange

des dich sol genüegen

what thee shall content

freudebærer wünne.

of-joyful delight.

715

720

725

- 730 der allez mankünne
he-who all mankind
 schuof unde in sîner gwalt hât,
created and in his power has,
 der gebe uns heil unde rât
he give us weal and counsel
 daz ich noch daz erringe
that I yet that achieve
 daz uns an ir gelinge.
that for-us with her succeed.
- 735 Des gewerbes, unz ichz leben hân,
Of-the wooing, while I-the life have,
 lâz ich dich nimmer abe gân.
let I thee never off go.
 von diu vernim, lîp, waz dû tuo.
from that hear, body, what thou do.
 grîf vil manlîchen zuo,
grasp very manfully to,
 wan ich erlâze dich sîn niht.
for I spare thee of-it not.
- 740 swaz kumbers dir dâ von geschiht,
whatever affliction to-thee there from befalls,
 des zel mir diu zwei teil.
of-that count to-me the two thirds.
 jâ stêt ez alsô umb daz heil,
indeed stands it so about the weal,
 im enist ze niemen gâch,
to-it is to no-one hasty,
 er enwerbe dar nâch:
he unless-strive there after:
- 745 ez lât sich vil gerne jagen
it lets itself very gladly hunt
 unde entrinnet ouch dem zagen:
and escapes also the coward:

swa ez den bœsen jäger siht,
where it the bad hunter sees,

den lât ez sich vâhen niht:
by-him lets it itself catch not:

ez kan mit listen vliehen:
it can with cunning flee:

man sol im zuo ziehen
one shall it toward draw

750

daz man ez nimmer vrî gebe:
that one it never free give:

man sol ez ze nôtstrebe
one shall it in need-strain

ginendeclîchen erloufen,
boldly run-down,

mit kumber sælde koufen.
with affliction fortune buy.

Ouch hât diu werlt vil manegen man
Also has the world very many-a man

755

der nie ahte gewan
who never heed got

ûf dehein êre,
upon any honor,

und hât doch heiles mêre
and has yet of-weal more

dan einer der die sinne hât
than one who the senses has

und dem sîn muot ze tugenden stât.
and to-whom his spirit to virtues stands.

760

dem hât daz got enteil getân.
to-him has that God as-share done.

den sulen wir ungenîdet lân,
him shall we unenvied leave,

wan swaz dem liebe geschiht,
for whatever to-him of-joy befalls,

ob er des immer mære giht
if he of-that ever more says

765 ez kome von sîner frumkeit,
it come from his prowess,

daz sî im gar widerseit:
that be to-him wholly refused:

er sage im selben nimmer danc.
he say to-him self never thanks.

ich erteile im freude die sint kranc.
I allot to-him joys that are feeble.

Swem iz anders niht gefüezet
To-whom it otherwise not falls-out

770 (des manegen doch genüezet)
(of-which many-a-one yet satisfies)

wan friundes hilfe und sîn guot,
but friend's help and his goods,

wil er dâ von sîn wol gemuot,
(if)-will he there from be well minded,

des gan ich im vil sêre,
of-that grant I to-him very sorely,

wan êst ein betrogen êre
for it-is a deceived honor

775 unde ein kintlîcher wân.
and a childish expectation.

als ich nû gesprochen hân,
as I now spoken have,

sô kan ich dir bescheiden wol
so can I thee instruct well

wes ein man geniezen sol:
of-what a man profit shall:

tugende unde sinne,
virtues and senses,

780 sô sint ez reine minne.
so are it pure love.

Von diu swer des geruochet

From that whoever of-that deigns

daz in daz heil verfluochet

that him the weal curses

unde er niwan sînen gruoꝛ

and he only its greeting

mit tugenden verdienen muoꝛ,

with virtues earn must,

als ez dir, lîp, ist gewant,

as it for-thee, body, is disposed,

dem muoꝛ werden erkant

to-him must become known

wes er die liute dunket wert.

of-what he the people seems worthy.

erwirbet er iht des er gert,

(if)-wins he at-all of-what he desires,

der mag im selben danc sagen

he may to-him self thanks say

und den muot dâ von wol hôhe tragen.

and the spirit there from well high bear.

Jâ wæne ie dehein man

Indeed think-I ever any man

âne kumber liep gewan.

without affliction joy got.

wir haben des mêre vernomen

we have of-that more heard

von manegen, der doch volkomen

of many-a-one, who yet perfect

was an ganzem sinne

was in whole mind

und ûf gnâde der minne

and upon grace of-the love

dienete ie vil schône,

served ever very finely,

785

790

795

und bleip mit swachem lône,
and remained with poor reward,

denn daz iemen habe heil,
than that anyone have weal,

800 ern gedienes etlich teil.
unless-be earn-of-it some part.

Lîp, daran gedenke wol
Body, thereon think well

und gebâre als ein man sol,
and behave as a man should,

tuo niht mêre als ein zage,
do not more as a coward,

lâz dîn üppige klage,
leave thy frivolous lament,

805 sich ûf unde wis frô,
look up and be glad,

und gebâre rehte alsô,
and behave just so,

‘got alsô guot, ich bin hie.’
‘God as good, I am here.’

ja verliez got den sînen nie.
indeed forsook God the his-own never.

erriute dich der bôsheit
root-out thyself of-the wickedness

810 (daz ir got gebe leit!).
(that to-it God give sorrow!).

wische den mies vonn ougen.
wipe the moss from-the eyes.

der rede sîn wir tougen:
of-the speech are we private:

dû weist wol daz du ie wære
thou knowest well that thou ever wert

ein rehter slîchære:
a true sneak:

vil lêre ich an dir verlôs,

much teaching I in thee lost,

ich züge als lîhte mûzær lôs.

I would-draw as easily moulted-hawks loose.

ziph, welch ein hovelîcher lîp!

pah, what a courtly body!

welchen tiuvel hæte ein wîp

what devil would-have a woman

solhes an dir erschen

such in thee seen

daz sî dir liebe lieze geschehen?

that she to-thee joy should-let happen?

Sich lîp, mir ist als wê

Look body, to-me is as woe

sam dem bluomen underm snê

as to-the flower under-the snow

der in dem merzen ûf gât,

which in the March up goes,

wan er niht ganzer hilfe hât

for it not whole help has

dannoch vor der sumerzît:

yet before the summer-time:

er duldert manegen herten strît

it endures many-a hard strife

von des winters gewalt:

from the winter's power:

er tuot in dicke ze kalt,

it does to-it often too cold,

unde sô er wære

and when it would-be

schœne, ob in verbære

fair, if it should-spare

des winters meisterschaft,

the winter's mastery,

815

820

825

830

sô benimt erm sîne kraft,
so takes it-from-it its strength,

und trîbet in von sînem rehte
and drives it from its right

der winter unde sîne knehte,
the winter and its servants,

835 daz ist der rîfe und der wint,
that is the hoarfrost and the wind,

die den bluomen schade sint.
which to-the flowers harm are.

Ouch vellets dicke der snê.
Also fells-it often the snow.

dannoch ist mînes schaden mê:
still is of-my harm more:

wan der bluome gedingen hât
for the flower hope has

840 daz sînes schaden werde rât
that of-its harm become remedy

swenne er umb den mitten tac
whenever it about the mid day

die sunnen wol gehabt mac,
the sun well have may,

und hât zuo dem meien trôst,
and has in the May comfort,

daz er danne werde erlôst
that it then become released

845 von des winters hant,
from the winter's hand,

wan sô bristet sîn bant,
for then bursts its bond,

und stêt danne den sumer lanc
and stands then the summer long

schône ân allen getwanc.
fairly without all constraint.

Sô ist mîn genâde kleine:

So is my grace small:

wan sô lâst dû mich deheine

for so lettest thou me no

850

wânliebe gewinnen.

hoped-for-joy win.

swes ich von guoten sinnen

whatever I from good senses

ze freuden gedenken mac

to joys think may

beide naht unde tac,

both night and day,

daz muoz ich under wegen lân,

that must I on-the way leave,

855

wan ich der hilfe niht enhân,

for I of-the help not have,

und blîbet unverendet

and remains unaccomplished

swa es mich dîn bôsheit wendet:

where of-it me thy wickedness turns:

wan dû bist leider unfruot,

for thou art alas unwise,

niht wan ze gemache stêt dîn muot,

nothing but to comfort stands thy spirit,

860

des ich dir harte sêre erban.

for-which I to-thee very sorely grudge.

sît ich an dir niht enkan

since I in thee not can

deheine tugende vinden

any virtues find

noch mit lêre überwinden,

nor with teaching overcome,

- 865 sô wær mir niht sô wæge
so would-be to-me nothing so preferable
 sô daz ouch ich verphlæge
as that also I should-renounce
 aller êren als dû:
all honor as thou:
 sô lebete ich mit gemache nû:
so would-live I with comfort now:
 wan ich an ganzem sinne
for I in whole mind
- 870 doch niht mê gewinne
yet not more gain
 wan nôt und ungemach.
than distress and discomfort.
 owê daz ich daz ie sprach!
alas that I that ever spoke!
 daz muoz mich entriuwen
that must me in-truth
 immer mêre geriuwen.
ever more rue.
- 875 wie solte ein herze verzagen?
how should a heart lose-heart?
 jâ muoz ich ez immer klagen
indeed must I it ever lament
 daz ie dehein böeser wanc
that ever any evil wavering
 kom in mînen gedanc.
came into my thought.
 ich wære dar an stæte,
I would-be there in constant,
- 880 ob ich tugent hæte.
if I virtue had.

doch hât ez mich geriwen sô fruo
yet has it me rued so early

daz ich ez noch widertuo:
that I it yet undo:

wan swenn ich gewenke dran,
for whenever I waver therein,

so gehazze mich wîp unde man.
so hate me woman and man.

ich wil nâch êren ringen,
I will after honor strive,

swie vil ich des mac bringen.
however much I of-that can bring.

885

The Heart Relents, and the Body Yields

VI

The heart warns that disobedience means endless strife, since it can only counsel while the body acts, and complains that the world blames a false heart for the body's misdeeds. The body replies that a friend should correct gently, and reminds the heart that they share one soul, whose reward or damnation will be theirs together. It vows to serve the lady even unrewarded, and to refuse no counsel except sorcery, murder, and faithlessness.

Ich wæne dich gefrewet hân.

I think thee gladdened have.

dû maht ez ûz dem muote lân

thou canst it out-of the spirit let

daz dehein dîn meisterschaft

that any thy mastery

890 an mir neme die kraft

in me take the strength

daz ich durch valschen rât

that I through false counsel

gein deheiner missetât

toward any misdeed

gewinne ie deheinen muot.

gain ever any spirit.

mîne sinne sint sô guot,

my senses are so good,

895 vil bezzer danne dîn.

very better than thine.

dû muost mir gehôrsam sîn:

thou must to-me obedient be:

swâ dû daz niht entuost,

wherever thou that not dost,

sô wizze daz dû haben muost

so know that thou have must

manege mûelîche zît:

many-a toilsome time:

900 ez wirt ein êwiger strît.

it becomes an eternal strife.

durch daz volge drâte

for that follow quickly

mînem guoten râte

my good counsel

und merke mîne lêre.

and mark my teaching.

sît daz ich durch dîn êre
since that I for thy honor

dich vlêgen began,
thee to-implore began,

sît hete ich mînen lantman
afterward would-have I my countryman

sînes schaden ê erbeten.
of-his harm before begged-off.

wir sîn niht rehte zsamen geweten,
we are not rightly together yoked,

wan wir ziehen niht gelîche:
for we pull not alike:

man solte uns wêrlîche
one should us truly

von ein ander scheiden:
from one another part:

daz kœme uns rehte beiden.
that would-come to-us rightly both.

Stüende der gewalt an mir
Should-stand the power in me

diu dinc ze verenden als an dir,
the things to accomplish as in thee,

des ez leider niht entuot
which it alas not does

(ich hân gewaltes wan den muot
(I have of-power but the spirit

und den frîen gedanc),
and the free thought),

dû müesest under dînen danc
thou wouldst-have-to against thy will

nâch gelobtem worte leben.
after promised word live.

905

910

915

920 nû ist mir leider niht gegeben
now is to-me alas not given

des gewaltes mêre
of-the power more

(daz schadet uns beiden sêre)
(that harms us both sorely)

wan daz ich der râtgebe dîn
but that I the counselor thine

ze allen dingen solte sîn.
in all things should be.

925 nû bist dû mir niht gehôrsam.
now art thou to-me not obedient.

ich weiz wol daz ich nie vernam
I know well that I never heard

deheines mannes missetât
any man's misdeed

sô verre über sîns herzen rât.
so far over his heart's counsel.

ez was ie ungewonlich.
it was ever unusual.

930 dâ von sô neweiz ich
there from so know-not I

waz der an mir richet
what he on me avenges

der immer daz gesprichet,
who ever that says,

swa er dîne missetât gesiht,
where he thy misdeed sees,

daz er sâ zehant giht
that he straightway at-once says

935 daz ez ein valschez herze tuo.
that it a false heart does.

dâ kume ich wunderlîchen zuo.
there come I wondrously to.

und wizze man mir ez niht,

and (if)-blame one to-me it not,

swaz lasters dir geschiht,

whatever of-reproach to-thee befalls,

daz het ich schiere verklagt.

that would-have I soon got-over-lamenting.

doch waz iemen nû sagt,

yet whatever anyone now says,

sô weiz daz unser herre Krist

so knows that our lord Christ

daz ez ân mîne schulde ist

that it without my guilt is

und daz mir unrehte geschihet,

and that to-me unjustly befalls,

ob joch sîn niemen gihet.

if even of-it no-one declares.

Uns dienet niht gelîcher muot.

Us serves not like spirit.

daz mir den meisten schaden tuot

what to-me the most harm does

daz ist daz mir niemen wil

that is that me no-one will

gelouben lützel noch vil.

believe little nor much.

waz frumet vil schœner sin,

what profits very fair sense,

sît ich der werlt allez bin

since I to-the world ever am

der wolf an dem spelle?

the wolf in the fable?

940

945

950

doch hân ich mich vil snelle

yet have I myself very quickly

eines muotes bewegen

of-one spirit resolved

des ich mir wil vür sorgen phlegen,

of-which I for-myself will against cares take-care,

955 daz ich mir ab selbe geloube.

that I me however self believe.

ein man der sich von roube

a man who himself from robbery

aller täglich begât

every day supports

unde sinnes niht enhât,

and sense not has,

der hât bezzer reht dan ich.

he has better right than I.

960 lîp, der schulde zîhe ich dich,

body, of-the guilt accuse I thee,

wan ich ân dich niht gedenken kan

for I without thee not think can

des ich willen ie gewan.

of-what I will ever got.

ezn stê noch an der hilfe dîn,

unless-it stand yet in the help thine,

sô müezen wir verteilet sîn

so must we deprived be

965 êren unde guotes.

of-honor and of-goods.

wil ab dû dich rehtes muotes

(if)-wilt however thou thyself of-right spirit

noch zuo mir gesellen,

yet to me join,

wir enden swaz wir wellen.

we accomplish whatever we will.

ich sage dir niht mêre,

I tell thee not more,

wan merke mîne lêre:

but mark my teaching:

des gewinnest dû noch ruon.

of-that gainest thou yet fame.

sage mir ob du ez wellest tuon.'

tell me whether thou it wilt do.'

'Herze, ichn weiz waz ich dir sage,

'Heart, I-not know what I to-thee say,

wan daz ich ez gote klage

except that I it to-God lament

daz dû mich gar unversolt

that thou me wholly undeserved

sus missehandeln solt

thus mistreat shouldst

als ich ein wunder habe getân:

as-if I a wonder have done:

ez wær under friunden guot verlân.

it were among friends good let-go.

ouch gezæme ez einem meister wol,

also would-befit it a master well,

swâ er iemen lêren sol

wherever he anyone teach shall

tugent oder êre,

virtue or honor,

daz er im die lêre

that he to-him the teaching

mit zûhten vor trûege:

with courtesy before should-bring:

daz wære iedoch gefüege.

that were nevertheless fitting.

nû strâfst dû mich als dînen kneht.

now chastisest thou me as thy servant.

970

975

980

985

ez was ie under friunden reht

it was ever among friends right

daz sî scheltwort vermiten

that they scolding-words avoided

unde mit vil guoten siten

and with very good manners

zuo ein ander giengen

to one another went

990 und sich bî handen viengen:

and themselves by hands took:

swaz einem an dem andern war,

whatever to-one in the other was-amiss,

daz sagete er im vil gar

that told he to-him very wholly

und bat in ez mîden.

and bade him it avoid.

daz moht ein friunt erlîden,

that might a friend endure,

995 und was er danne ein man

and (if)-was he then a man

der ie guoten sin gewan,

who ever good sense got,

sô meinet er ez ie alsô

so meant he it ever so

und verstuont sich der triwen dô

and understood himself of-the faithfulness then

daz erz im riet âne haz.

that he-it to-him counseled without hatred.

1000 daz selbe zæme ouch dir baz

the same would-befit also thee better

denne dröun und schelten.

than threatening and scolding.

wes lâstû mich engelten?

for-what lettest-thou me pay?

Ich muoz dich râtes frâgen:

I must thee for-counsel ask:

wilt dû dar umbe bâgen,

(if)-wilt thou there about quarrel,

der site ist dir niht guot,

the custom is for-thee not good,

wan sô darft dû nimmer wol gemuot

for so needst thou never well minded

werden zuo einer stunt.

become at one hour.

diu rede ist dir wol kunt

the saying is to-thee well known

daz ez dem lîbe alsô stât

that it with-the body so stands

daz er helfe unde rât

that it help and counsel

von dem herzen nemen sol.

from the heart take shall.

dâ von sô zæme uns beiden wol

there from so would-befit us both well

daz wir lebten âne strît

that we should-live without strife

mit ein ander alle zît.

with one another all time.

wan dîn unbescheiden zorn

for thy unreasonable anger

der ist ouch zwâre verlorn:

that is also truly lost:

wan swer dâ zuo nû kæme

for whoever there to now should-come

daz er daz vernæme,

that he that should-hear,

ez wære niwan sîn spot.

it would-be only his mockery.

1005

1010

1015

- 1020 von diu lâzen wirz durch got
from that leave we-it for God
 unde gedenken dar an
and think there on
 daz wir beide sîn ein man.
that we both are one man.
 nû zwiu solt ich âne dich
now for-what should I without thee
 od waz möhtst dû âne mich?
or what couldst thou without me?
- 1025 Ist daz duz fürdermâle lâst,
(if)-Is that thou-it henceforth leavest,
 swaz dû mich missehandelt hâst
whatever thou me mistreated hast
 daz wil ich varn lâzen.
that will I go let.
 ouch maht dû dichs gemâzen:
also canst thou thyself-of-it moderate:
 bist dû mir guot, sam bin ich dir,
(if)-art thou to-me good, so am I to-thee,
- 1030 wan ân ein ander mugen wir
for without one another can we
 deheine wîle genesen:
no while survive:
 wir müezen immer sament wesen.
we must ever together be.
 wir mugen uns niht gescheiden.
we can us not part.
 got der hât uns beiden
God he has to-us both
- 1035 eine sêle gegeben
one soul given
 (anders möht wir niht geleben),
(otherwise could we not live),

die nimet er uns swanne er wil:

which takes he from-us whenever he will:

des haben wir kein gewissez zil.

of-that have we no certain term.

ouch hât ers uns bevolhen sô

also has he-it to-us entrusted so

mit einer vorhtesamer drô,

with a fearsome threat,

er versagt ir sînen segen,

he refuses to-it his blessing,

ez sî daz wir ir rehte phlegen,

unless-it be that we of-it rightly take-care,

sô ist ir lôn bereite

so is its reward ready

nâch unserm geleite.

according-to our guidance.

ist daz wir ir alsô walten

(if)-is that we it so govern

daz wir sîn gebot behalten,

that we his commandment keep,

sô gît er uns ze lône

so gives he us as reward

die liechten himelkrône.

the bright heaven-crown.

versprech wir daz mit frîer wal,

(if)-reject we that with free choice,

sô antwurt er uns in die zal

so delivers he us into the number

der helleschen kinde,

of-the hellish children,

dem tiuvel zingesinde.

to-the devil as-household.

1040

1045

1050

sô sîn unheiles geborn

so are of-misfortune born

unde ouch immer verlorn

and also ever lost

1055 beide mit ein ander wir.

both with one another we.

herze, dar nâch rât mir

heart, there after counsel me

wie dû wellest daz ich tuo,

how thou wilt that I do,

und verleite mich niht dar zuo

and mislead me not there to

dâ von wir verloren sîn:

there from we lost are:

1060 wan mîn dinc ist daz dîn.

for my affair is the thine.

Mîn wille niht fluihet

My will not flees

swaz zuo dem dienste geziuhet:

whatever to the service pertains:

swaz ich getuon mac oder sol,

whatever I do can or shall,

daz leiste ich gerne und tuot mir wol:

that perform I gladly and does me well:

1065 swaz mir ze liden geschiht,

whatever to-me to suffer befalls,

ez vervâhe wol oder niht,

it avail well or not,

ich versuoche ez immer unz ich lebe.

I try it ever while I live.

got sî der uns gelücke gebe.

God be who us luck give.

- Ist daz ez mir ab sô ergât
(if)-Is that it to-me however so goes
- daz mich daz unheil bestât 1070
that me the misfortune befalls
- daz mir dâ niht gelingen sol,
that for-me there not succeed shall,
- dannoch tuot mir daz vil wol
still does me that very well
- daz ich diensthaft belîbe
that I serviceable remain
- einem also schœnen wîbe:
to-a so fair woman:
- ich lebe ir gerne mîniu jâr. 1075
I live for-her gladly my years.
- jâ troestet mich baz, daz ist wâr,
indeed comforts me better, that is true,
- ein vil ungewisser wân
a very uncertain expectation
- dên ich zuo ir minne hân
which I to her love have
- danne ein alsô swachez heil
than a so poor weal
- des ich ze mâze wurde geil. 1080
of-which I in measure should-become merry.
- ouch gewinne ich mê dar an,
also gain I more there by,
- swaz ich mac oder kan,
whatever I can or know-how,
- daz ich mich durch sî vlîzen sol
that I myself for her exert shall
- ze tuon rehte oder wol
to do right or well
- und valsches durch sî abe bin. 1085
and from-falsehood for her away am.

vil gerne ich allen mînen sin
very gladly I all my mind

wende ze guote
turn to good

und habe alwegen huote
and have always guard

daz ich immer missetuo,
lest I ever misdo,

1090 mich verleite danne derzuo
me mislead unless there-to

daz ich niht bezzers künne.
that I not better know.

der mir dan heiles gûnne,
he-who to-me then of-weal grant,

der râfse mich durch sîn êre:
he rebuke me for his honor:

sô tuon ich es nimmer mêre.
so do I it never more.

1095 der worte ich tuon mit werken schîn.
of-the words I make with deeds evident.

dâ mite sol ir gedienet sîn:
there with shall to-her served be:

und swaz ich guotes mac begân,
and whatever I of-good can undertake,

daz ist von mir benamen getân.
that is by me assuredly done.

enpfâhe ichs nimmer lôn von ir,
(if)-receive I-of-it never reward from her,

1100 dannoch frûmet ez mir
still profits it to-me

daz mirz diu werlt ze guote verstât
that me-it the world as good understands

und mich deste lieber hât.
and me the dearer holds.

Ouch ist mir daz ein swacher trôst,

Also is to-me that a poor comfort,

wan ich bin leides unerlôst.

for I am of-sorrow unreleased.

ob sî mich einen lâzen wil,

if she me alone leave will,

son ahte ich ûf die werlt niht vil,

so care I for the world not much,

wederz sî der zweier tuot,

which she of-the two does,

sî sprech mir übel oder guot:

she speak to-me ill or good:

wan sô stêt mîn gemüete

for so stands my spirit

daz aller wîbe güete

that all women's goodness

ze freuden mich niht vervienge,

to joys me not would-avail,

ob mir an ir missegienge.

if for-me in her should-miscarry.

ich habe mich, herze, des begeben,

I have myself, heart, of-that given-up,

ich wil deheiner freude leben

I will of-no joy live

durch wân ûf ander minne.

through expectation on other love.

swelch lôn ich des gewinne,

whatever reward I of-that gain,

ich wil ir immer sîn bereit.

I will to-her ever be ready.

swaz iemen ie durch wîp erleit,

whatever anyone ever for woman suffered,

des hân ich dehein werwort:

of-that have I no refusal:

1105

1110

1115

- 1120 âne zoubr und âne mort
except sorcery and except murder
 und daz an die triwe gât
and what against the faithfulness goes
 so verwirfe ich deheinen rât,
so reject I no counsel,
 ichn leiste in durch ir êre.
unless-I perform it for her honor.
 des vindestû nimmêre
of-that findest-thou nevermore
- 1125 an mir deheinen argen wanc.'
in me any evil wavering'

Question and Answer

VII

The heart praises the body's change of mind and forgives the harm it has done. They make peace, and a quick exchange of one-line questions and answers follows. The body complains of a distress, the heart says that the lady oppresses it, and the body answers that she oppresses it too. The heart tells it to serve her and to buy fortune with good sense. They trade reproaches about foolishness, the body asks to be taught, and the heart promises good counsel.

- 'Lîp, der rede habe danc.
'Body, for-the speech have thanks.
 ez ist kein wunder daz ein man
it is no wonder that a man
 der niht bezzers enkan
who not better knows
 eine wîle missetuot.
a while misdoes.
- 1130 hât er ze bezzerunge muot,
(if)-has he for improvement spirit,

und ob erz schämlichen lât
and if he-it shamefacedly leaves

swa er sich selben verstât,
where he himself self understands,

und niht dankes missevert,
and not willingly goes-astray,

und lâzet daz man im wert,
and leaves what one to-him forbids,

und sîn selbes ruochet
and of-his self takes-care

sô daz er rât suochet,
so that he counsel seeks,

unde in des wol gezimet
and to-him of-that well befits

daz er nütze râte an sich nimet,
that he useful counsels to himself takes,

des mac wol werden guot rât.
of-that may well become good remedy.

swes muot aber alsô stât
whose spirit however so stands

daz im rât versmâhet,
that to-him counsel is-scorned,

und er der werke gâhet
and he to-the deeds hastens

vil unbescheidenlîchen,
very unreasonably,

dem muoz sîn sin gewîchen,
to-him must his mind fail,

mirn haben die wîsen gelogen:
unless-to-me have the wise lied:

er ist des sinnes betrogen,
he is of-the mind deceived,

sîn leben ist der werlte spot.
his life is the world's mockery.

1135

1140

1145

lîp, dâ von lobe ich got

body, there from praise I God

des ich von dir vernomen hân.

for-what I from thee heard have.

1150 des hâst dû mich in böesen wân

of-that hast thou me into evil expectation

vil gar eine wîle brâht:

very wholly a while brought:

nû hâst dû dich baz bedâht

now hast thou thyself better bethought

daz dir sô misselunge:

that for-thee so should-miscarry:

vil guote wandelunge

very good amendment

1155 hân ich nû von dir vernomen.

have I now from thee heard.

daz sol dir noch ze heile komen.

that shall to-thee yet to weal come.

Verwirf mînen rât niht

Reject my counsel not

und wizze daz dir wol geschicht.

and know that to-thee well befalls.

und ist daz dû wâr lâst

and (if)-is that thou true lettest-be

1160 als dû mir geheizen hâst,

as thou to-me promised hast,

sô sî der schade verkorn

so be the harm forgiven

âne aller slahte zorn

without of-any kind anger

den dû uns als manegen tac

which thou to-us so many-a day

schüefe, dô unser phlac

didst-make, when of-us took-care

liep âne swære,

joy without grief,

als unser reht wære:

as our right were:

daz wande uns, lîp, dîn lazheit.

that turned-from us, body, thy laziness.

‘herze, deist mir immer leit,

‘heart, that-is to-me ever sorrow,

unde bûeze ez swâ ich sol.’

and atone it wherever I shall.’

‘nu gevellet mir dîn rede wol.’

‘now pleases me thy speech well.’

‘entriwen unde tuot sî sô?’

‘in-truth and does it so?’

‘jâ sî zwâre alsô.’

‘yes it truly so.’

‘nû leiste ich gerne swaz dû wil.’

‘now perform I gladly whatever thou wilt.’

‘sô füege ich dir liebes vil.’

‘so arrange I for-thee of-joy much.’

‘herze, waz gap dir den gewalt?’

‘heart, what gave to-thee the power?’

‘dîn üppic frâge tuot mich alt.’

‘thy frivolous question makes me old.’

‘nû zürne niht und wis mir guot.’

‘now be-angry not and be to-me good.’

1165

1170

1175

‘waz ist daz dir unsanfte tuot?’

‘what is that to-thee ungently does?’

‘dû maht wol selbe wizzen waz.’

‘thou canst well self know what.’

1180 ‘wurd ichs gemant, ich wesse ez baz.’

‘were I-of-it reminded, I would-know it better.’

‘mir wart nie hilfe nôt wan nû.’

‘to-me became never help need but now.’

‘sage, lîp, waz meinst dû?’

‘say, body, what meanest thou?’

‘mîn leben daz ist kumberlich.’

‘my life that is afflicted.’

‘bistû siech?’ ‘nein ich.’

‘art-thou sick?’ ‘no I.’

1185 ‘kundich, lîp, ich hulfe dir.’

‘if-I-could, body, I would-help thee.’

‘dû solt ân Kundich helfen mir.’

‘thou shalt without If-I-could help me.’

‘waz wirret dir? des wîse mich.’

‘what troubles thee? of-that instruct me.’

‘dû weist ez als wol als ich.’

‘thou knowest it as well as I.’

‘ich wæn dû fürhtest den tût.’

‘I think thou fearest the death.’

1190 ‘niht, ez ist ein ander nôt.’

‘not, it is an other distress.’

‘ist ez umb die sêle od umb den lîp?’

‘is it about the soul or about the body?’

‘umbe beidiu.’ ‘daz vertrîp.’

‘about both.’ ‘that drive-away.’

‘daz lêre mich.’ ‘hât ez iht namen?’

‘that teach me.’ ‘has it at-all name?’

‘herze, dû maht dich wol schamen

‘heart, thou canst thyself well be-ashamed

des spottes des du an mir begâst.’

of-the mockery which thou on me practicest.’

1195

‘wie kumet daz du ez niht wizzen lâst?’

‘how comes that thou it not know lettest?’

‘mir ist wê, und bin gesunt.’

‘to-me is woe, and am sound.’

‘wie dem sî deist mir unkunt.’

‘how with-that be that-is to-me unknown.’

‘herze, wie wol dû ez weist.’

‘heart, how well thou it knowest.’

‘niht ê dû mirz geseist.’

‘not before thou to-me-it sayest.’

1200

‘herze, hâst dû iht swære?’

‘heart, hast thou at-all grief?’

‘jâ ich, der ich wol enbære.’

‘yes I, which I well would-do-without.’

‘wâ von ist dir diu bekomen?’

‘where from is to-thee that come?’

‘daz hâst dû dicke wol vernomen.’

‘that hast thou often well heard.’

‘und hâst dû niht wan eine nôt?’

‘and hast thou nothing but one distress?’

1205

‘wær ir iht mê, daz wær mîn tôt.’

‘were of-it at-all more, that were my death.’

‘wâ von mac doch diu selbe sîn?’

‘where from can yet the same be?’

‘dâ twinget mich diu frowe mîn.’

‘there compels me the lady mine.’

‘so geloube mir, mich deste baz.’

‘so believe me, me the better.’

‘lîp, ist ouch dir daz?’

‘body, is also to-thee that?’

1210

‘nû wâ von wær mir anders wê?’

‘now where from were to-me otherwise woe.’

‘sô schaf selbe deiz ergê.’

‘so bring-about self that-it happen.’

‘wâ mite?’ ‘daz sagete ich dir ie.’

‘where with?’ ‘that told I to-thee ever.’

‘son weiz ich noch leider wie.’

‘so-not know I yet alas how.’

1215 ‘dâ gehœret arbeit zuo.’

‘there belongs hardship to.’

‘nû waz gebiutst et daz ich tuo?’

‘now what commandest just that I do?’

‘dâ diene ir vil schône.’

‘there serve her very finely.’

‘wie lange?’ ‘unz sî dir lône.’

‘how long?’ ‘until she thee reward.’

‘swaz ich tuon, daz ist dîn sælekeit.

‘whatever I do, that is thy blessedness.

1220 ir ist mîn dienst vil lihte leit.’

to-her is my service very likely grievous.’

‘dar ûz solt dû sî bringen.’

‘there out-of shalt thou her bring.’

‘sage mir, mit welhen dingen?’

‘tell me, with what things?’

‘dâ mite ob du in rehte tuost.’

‘there with if thou it rightly dost.’

‘daz ist des dû mich wîsen muost.’

‘that is what thou me instruct must.’

1225 ‘dâ wis biderbe unde guot.’

‘there be worthy and good.’

‘waz ob sis dehein war tuot?’

‘what if she-of-it no heed takes?’

‘sô wær sî niht ein guot wîp.’

‘so were she not a good woman.’

‘si ist guot: wær ich ein sælic lîp.’

‘she is good: were I a blessed body.’

‘dû solt dich sælec machen.’

‘thou shalt thyself blessed make.’

‘ichn weiz mit welhen sachen.’

‘I-not know with what things.’

1230

‘dû muost mit sinnen koufen heil.’

‘thou must with wits buy weal.’

‘des sinnes hân ich swachez teil.’

‘of-the sense have I poor share.’

‘des muoz dir sælde wesen gast.’

‘of-that must to-thee fortune be stranger.’

‘ir gnâde mir noch ie gebrast.

‘her grace to-me yet ever lacked.

wâ mite verschulde ich ouch ir haz?’

where with deserve I also her hatred?’

1235

‘dû hâst ir niht gedienet baz:

‘thou hast her not served better:

lîp, daz schînet dir wol an.’

body, that shows to-thee well on.’

‘herze, ez gelingt als bæsem man.’

‘heart, it succeeds as for-a-bad man.’

‘lîp, dû gevellst dir selbe wol.’

‘body, thou pleasest thyself self well.’

‘niht wan als ich ze rehte sol.’

‘not except as I to right should.’

1240

‘des einen habentz die tôren guot.’

‘of-that one have-it the fools good.’

‘wes?’ ‘dâ dünkent sî sich selbe fruo.’

‘of-what?’ ‘there seem they to-themselves self wise.’

‘herze, daz meinest dû an mich.’

‘heart, that meanest thou at me.’

‘entriwen, lîp, jâ ich.’

‘in-truth, body, yes I.’

1245 'wâ mite verschulde ich daz ze dir?'

'where with deserve I that toward thee?'

'daz weiz ich wol.' 'nû sage ez mir.'

'that know I well.' 'now tell it to-me.'

'mit unbescheiden muote.'

'with unreasonable spirit.'

'den wandel ich ze guote.'

'that change I to good.'

'daz ist daz dich noch helfen sol.'

'that is what thee yet help shall.'

1250 'kunde ich ez, ich tæte ez wol.'

'could I it, I would-do it well.'

'dâ volge den die wîser sint.'

'there follow those who wiser are.'

'nû lêre mich, ich bin dîn kint.'

'now teach me, I am thy child.'

'und ich dîn gwisser râtgebe.'

'and I thy sure counselor.'

'sô volge ich dir als gerne ich lebe.'

'so follow I thee as gladly I live.'

1255 'sô solt dû liebes dich versehen.'

'so shalt thou of-joy thyself expect.'

'daz müeze uns beiden noch geschehen.'

'that may to-us both yet happen.'

'dîn wünschen hilft dich niht ein hâr.'

'thy wishing helps thee not a hair.'

'herze, daz ist vil wâr.'

'heart, that is very true.'

'wünschen was unmanlich ie.'

'wishing was unmanly ever.'

1260 'nû wil ouch ichz versprechen hie.'

'now will also I-it renounce here.'

'ist dir nâch ir minne nôt?'

'is to-thee after her love need?'

‘minnet sî mich niht, ez ist mîn tôt.’

‘(if)-loves she me not, it is my death.’

‘sô lâ dîn ernst wesen schîn.’

‘so let thy earnest be evident.’

‘swie dû gebiutest, herze mîn.’

‘however thou commandest, heart mine.’

‘swie tump ich nû selbe bin,

‘however foolish I now self am,

ich wil dir râten guoten sin.’

I will to-thee counsel good sense.’

‘den vernim ich gerne

‘that hear I gladly

ze diu daz ich in lerne.’

to that that I it learn.’

1265

The Magic of Three Herbs

VIII

The heart teaches the body a magic brought from France. It needs three herbs that only God, the herbalist, gives: bounty, courtesy, and humility, mixed with faithfulness, constancy, chastity, modesty, and manhood, and carried in a heart without hatred. This magic wins favor with God and the world. The heart condemns real sorcery used to win women, which has damned many, and tells the body to win her rightly.

‘Lîp, nû solt dû volgen mir:

‘Body, now shalt thou follow me:

daz ist niemen als guot als dir.

that is to-no-one as good as to-thee.

ich hîrt dich zouber ê versprechen:

I heard thee sorcery before renounce:

daz gelûbede muost dû brechen.

that vow must thou break.

1270

wil dû immer gwinen heil
(if)-wilt thou ever win weal

od liebes deheinen teil,
or of-joy any share,

1275 sô lerne einen zouberlist
so learn a magic-art

der benamen guot ist.
which assuredly good is.

maht dû daz gewinnen wol
(if)-canst thou that obtain well

daz man dar zuo haben sol,
which one there to have shall,

sô muoz dir gelingen:
so must for-thee succeed:

1280 ich brâhte in von Karlingen.
I brought it from France.

Nû sich daz dû ez verdagest:
Now see that thou it keep-silent:

doch enruoche ich wem duz sagest.
yet not-care I to-whom thou-it tellest.

ez ist dar umbe sô getân,
it is there about so made,

swer in ze rehte sol begân
whoever it to right shall practice

1285 der muoz haben driu krût,
he must have three herbs,

diu tuont in lieb unde trût.
which make him dear and beloved.

der endarft dû aber niht warten
for-them needst thou however not look

in deheines mannes garten,
in any man's garden,

ouch vindt sî niemen veile.
also finds them no-one for-sale.

ezn stê an sînem heile

unless-it stand in his weal

1290

daz er sî gewinne

that he them obtain

von dem mit schoënem sinne

from him with fair mind

der si in sîme gewalte hât,

who them in his power has,

son hilfet in dehein rât,

so helps him no counsel,

er wæn ir iemer enbære.

he I-ween them ever would-do-without.

1295

got der ist der wûrzære,

God he is the herbalist,

der phliget ir alters eine.

he tends them quite alone.

sîn kamer diu ist reine:

his chamber that is pure:

dar ûz gît er sî swem er wil:

there out-of gives he them to-whom he will:

der hât ouch immer heiles vil.

he has also ever of-weal much.

1300

Diu krût sint dir unerkant:

The herbs are to-thee unknown:

alsô sint sî genant,

so are they named,

milte zuht diemuot.

bounty breeding humility.

ez ist kein krûtzouber sô guot:

it is no herb-magic so good:

- 1305 swelich sæliger man
whatever blessed man
 diu driu krût tempern kan
the three herbs mix can
 dar nâch als in gesetzet ist,
there after as for-it prescribed is,
 daz ist der rehte zouberlist.
that is the right magic-art.
 ouch hœrent ander wûrze derzuo
also belong other roots there-to
- 1310 ê daz man im rehte tuo,
before that one it rightly do,
 triwe unde stæte:
faithfulness and constancy:
 swer die dar zuo niht hæte,
whoever those there to not had,
 sô müese der list belîben:
so must the art fail:
 ouch muost dû dar zuo rîben
also must thou there to grind
- 1315 beide kiuscheit unde schame:
both chastity and modesty:
 dannoch ist ein krûtes name
yet is of-one herb name
 gewislîchiu manheit:
sure manhood:
 sô ist daz zouber gar bereit.
so is the magic wholly ready.
 und swem alsô gelinget
and to-whomever so succeeds
- 1320 daz er sî zesamen bringet,
that he them together brings,
 der sol sî schûten in ein vaz:
he shall them pour into a vessel:

daz ist ein herze âne haz:

that is a heart without hatred:

dâ sol er sî inne tragen,

there shall be them inside carry,

sô wil ich dir daz zwâre sagen

so will I to-thee that truly say

daz im diu sælde ist bereit

that to-him the fortune is ready

1325

unz er sî bî im treit.

while be them by him carries.

Hetest dû der krûte gewalt

Hadst thou of-the herbs power

diu ich dir, lîp, hân vor gezalt,

which I to-thee, body, have before told,

nû sich, dez vaz lîhe ich dir,

now see, the vessel lend I to-thee,

wan daz erkenne ich an mir.

for that recognize I in me.

1330

nu gebristet dir ir sêre.

now lacks to-thee of-them sorely.

sô aber dû ir ie mêre

so however thou of-them ever more

mügest gewinnen, lîp, daz tuo,

mayest gain, body, that do,

wan dâ râte ich dir zuo,

for there counsel I to-thee to,

und enblandez dînem lîbe:

and charge-it to-thy body:

1335

wan sol dir von wîbe

for (if)-shall to-thee from woman

immer rehte wol ergân,

ever rightly well go,

sô muost dû ditze zouber hân.

so must thou this magic have.

ouch ist ez eines dinges guot,
also is it in-one thing good,

1340 daz man ez âne laster tuot
that one it without reproach does

und âne grôze sünde.
and without great sin.

wol in der ir hât künde!
well for-him who of-it has knowledge!

daz ist zer werlte ein sælekeit
that is in-the world a blessedness

und ist gote niht ze leit,
and is to-God not to sorrow,

1345 ez ist bêdenthâlp ein gwin,
it is on-both-sides a gain,

got und diu werlt minnet in:
God and the world love him:

swer den selben zouber kan,
whoever the same magic knows,

der ist zer werlt ein sælec man.
he is in-the world a blessed man.

Ich râte dir den einen
I counsel to-thee the one

1350 und anders deheinen:
and other none:

wan daz wær misselungen,
for that were miscarried,

wurde ein wîp betwungen
should-become a woman compelled

mit zouberlîchen dingen.
with magical things.

dû darft niht ûz dingen,
thou needst not out stipulate,

1355 wan ich wil anders niht.
for I will otherwise nothing.

swem liebe dâ von geschiht,
to-whomever joy there from befalls,

des freut er sich unrehte:
of-that rejoices he himself wrongly:

wan daz ist bösem knehte
for that is to-bad servant

gemein unt rîchem herren
common and to-rich lord

und mac doch gewerren
and can yet harm

1360

dem manne an der sælekeit.
the man in the blessedness.

got gebe im immer leit
God give to-him ever sorrow

der sîn von êrste began!
who of-it at first began!

wan dâ hât manec man
for there has many-a man

und ouch vil manec wîp
and also very many-a woman

1365

verloren sêle unde lîp.
lost soul and body.

durch daz suln wir in lâzen:
for that shall we it leave:

daz er sî verwâzen!
that it be cursed!

und sül dir gelingen,
and (if)-shall for-thee succeed,

daz erwirp mit rehten dingen.
that win with right things.

1370

ichn weiz waz ich dir sagen sol,
I-not know what I to-thee say shall,

wan dû tuo rehte unde wol,
but thou do right and well,

frume von dir guotiu mære:

make of thee good tidings:

ist dir disiu lère swære,

(if)-is to-thee this teaching heavy,

1375 sô wizze dazte unsælec bist.’

so know that-thou unblessed art.’

The Body’s Oath

IX

The body welcomes the teaching and would gladly become such a sorcerer to win the lady’s grace. The lady cannot see its mind and, since women are often lied to, must fear deceit. Even the heart doubts its sincerity, so the body swears to be damned if it has ever been faithless to her. It fears it has spoken too boldly, since she is fit to take an angel’s place. It praises her above all women, like a carbuncle that outshines other stones, and vows that only death will part it from her.

‘Nein, herze, noch, sî enist:

‘No, heart, still, it is-not:

wan sî mich bezzert sêre,

for it me betters sorely,

daz sî mir immer mêre

so-that it to-me ever more

muoz gevallen vil wol,

must please very well,

1380 daz ich sî gerne ervollen sol

that I it gladly fulfill shall

alle wîle unde ich mac,

all while and I can,

und lebete gerne noch den tac
and would-live gladly yet the day

daz ich ein zouberære
that I a sorcerer

nâch dîner lêre wære,
after thy teaching were,

niwan ûf daz eine heil
only for the one weal

daz ich ir gnâden einen teil
that I of-her graces a share

müeste gewinnen:
might win:

wan ich von mînen sinnen
for I from my senses

âne zwîvel scheiden muoz,
without doubt part must,

ezn wende ir gnâdeclîcher gruoꝝ,
unless-it avert her gracious greeting,

des mir noch gar von ir gebrast.
of-which to-me yet wholly from her lacked.

des muoz mir freude wesen gast.
of-that must to-me joy be stranger.

doch darf mich niht wundern mê
yet need me not wonder more

von welhen schulden daz ergê
from what causes that come-about

daz sî mîn swærez leit
that she my heavy sorrow

mit alsô ringem muote treit.
with so light spirit bears.

1385

1390

1395

Sît ir daz gemüete mîn

Since to-her the spirit mine

also verborgen muoz sîn

so hidden must be

daz si es niht anders wizzen mac

that she of-it not otherwise know can

1400 wan als ich irz, sô man ie phlac,

but as I to-her-it, as one ever did,

mit Worten bescheine

with words show

(son weiz sî ob ichz meine

(so-not knows she whether I-it mean

mit rehten triwen oder niht:

with right faithfulness or not:

des ir ze fürhten geschiht

of-which to-her to fear befalls

1405 daz sî werde betrogen:

that she become deceived:

wan den wîben ist sô vil gelogen

for to-the women is so much lied

daz sî ez wol fürhten muoz),

that she it well fear must),

und ich dar zuo ir gruoze

and I there to her greeting

leider unverdientet hân,

alas unearned have,

1410 sô möht ichz âne klage lân,

so could I-it without lament leave,

sît dû mir selbe leit tuost

since thou to-me self sorrow dost

und doch mit mir genesen muost

and yet with me be-saved must

unde mîne witze treist

and my wits carriest

und allen mînen willen weist:

and all my will knowest:

des lebe ich harte swâre:

of-that live I very heavily:

du geloubest mirs undâre

thou believest me-it hardly

daz mir sô rehter ernst ist.

that to-me so right earnest is.

nû kan ich keinen bezzern list,

now know I no better cunning,

wan mit disen dingen

but with these things

wil ichs dich innen bringen:

will I-of-it thee aware bring:

ich hân die vinger ûf geleit

I have the fingers up laid

unde swer dirs einen eit.

and swear to-thee-of-it an oath.

Ich bite mir got helfen sô

I pray me God help so

daz ich nimmer mêre vrô

that I never more glad

werde ode gewinne

become or win

deheine werltminne

any worldly-love

oder dehein êre,

or any honor,

1415

1420

1425

niwan daz ich mit sêre

except that I with pain

müeze leiten mîn leben

must lead my life

1430 und dem unrehtez ende geben

and to-it wrongful end give

und daz diu arme sêle mîn

and that the poor soul mine

êweclichen müeze sîn

eternally must be

in der tiefen helle

in the deep hell

Jûdases geselle,

Judas's companion,

1435 dâ niemen freude haben mac,

where no-one joy have can,

unz an den jungesten tac,

until to the last day,

und daz sî dannoch niht sî

and that it still not be

vor des tiuvels banden frî,

from the devil's bonds free,

daz ich den ungetriwen muot,

that I the faithless spirit,

1440 dâ mite an wîben missetuot

there with to women misdoes

durch sînen valsch vil manic man,

through his falsehood very many-a man,

wider sî noch nie gewan.

toward her yet never got.

Ich het ie einen gedanc

I had ever one thought

sît daz mich ir gewalt betwanc,

since that me her power compelled,

ob ez mir sô wol ergienge 1445
if it for-me so well should-go

daz sî mîn gnâde gevienge,
that she me into-grace should-take,

daz ich sô gar in ir gebote
that I so wholly in her command

wolte leben daz ich nâch gote
would live that I after God

niht liebers hæte.
nothing dearer had.

wurd ich dar an unstæte, 1450
should-become I there in inconstant,

da verlûre niemen an wan ich.
there would-lose no-one by but I.

zwâre jâ bin ich
truly indeed am I

iedoch mîn selbes vîent niht,
yet my own enemy not,

ob mir liep von ir geschiht,
if to-me joy from her befalls,

daz ich mir gerne enphremde guot: 1455
that I from-myself gladly estrange good:

daz wirdet doch vil wol behuot.
that becomes yet very well guarded.

Owê, waz hân ich getân!
Alas, what have I done!

jâ wæne ich mich vergâhet hân
indeed think I myself too-basty have

daz ich sô nâhen sprechen sol.
that I so near speak shall.

sî gunde mirs danne wol, 1460
she would-grant me-it then well,

wær ich ie solhes heiles wert

were I ever of-such weal worthy

des doch mîn gemüete gert?

of-which yet my spirit desires?

mîn rede wær ir von rehte zorn:

my speech were to-her by right anger:

wan und hæte got verlorn

for and had God lost

1465 einen engel von sîm rîche,

an angel from his kingdom,

jâ möhte sî im sîn gelîche,

indeed might she to-him be equal,

und mit ir nâch grôzen êren

and with her after great honor

sîn here wider mêren,

his host again increase,

wan sî zæm wol an eins engels stat.

for she would-fit well in an angel's place.

1470 ouch hân ich in den muot gesat

also have I into the spirit set

daz ich wætlich werde wert

that I seemly become worthy

swes ein man von rehte gert.

of-what a man by right desires.

ein gedanc sol mir wesen guot:

one thought shall to-me be good:

ich hân den willen und den muot,

I have the will and the spirit,

1475 ob mir got des gûnnen wil,

if to-me God of-that grant will,

daz ichz noch bringe ûf daz zil

that I-it yet bring to the goal

daz mir die liute beginnen jehen

that to-me the people begin to-say

mir sül von rehte wol geschehen.

to-me should by right well happen.

und des ich noch niht wert bin,

and of-what I yet not worthy am,

ganze tugent und wîsen sin,

whole virtue and wise sense,

den vordert mir noch niemen zuo:

that demands of-me yet no-one to:

wan daz wær mir noch al ze fruoz,

for that were for-me yet all too early,

sî sint von mînen jâren niht

they are from my years not

den man der grôzen sinne giht.

whom one of-the great mind credits.

swie mir mîn dinc dar umbe ergê,

however for-me my affair there about goes,

swie mîn sælde noch gestê,

however my fortune yet stand,

so vergelte im got den süezen rât

so repay him God the sweet counsel

der sô ganze volge hât

who so whole assent has

gewisses lobes von wîser diet,

of-sure praise from wise folk,

daz mir mîn sin an sî riet,

that to-me my mind to her counseled,

ze swelher nôt ez mir gestê.

to whatever distress it for-me come.

1480

1485

1490

wan sô ich in der werlt ie mê
for as I in the world ever more

guoter wîbe mac gespehen,
good women can espy,

als ich der ahte kan ersehen,
as I of-them heed can perceive,

1495 sô kumt et von ir güete daz
so comes just from her goodness that

daz sî mir ie baz unde baz
that she me ever better and better

von schulden wil gevallen:
by rights will please:

wan sô ziuht sî ûz in allen
for so draws her out-of them all

ir tugenthafter muot,
her virtuous spirit,

1500 als den karfunkel tuot
as the carbuncle does

sîn schîn, als ich høre jehen:
its gleam, as I hear say:

selbe hân ichs niht gesehen.
myself have I-it not seen.

Mir sagent manege daz er
To-me say many that it

des vinstern nahtes licht ber
of-the dark night light bears

1505 und daz er alters eine
and that it quite alone

lesche ander steine
extinguishes other stones

swâ er bî in lît.
where it by them lies.

daz lop lâzen âne nît

the praise let without envy

alle frowen die nû leben.

all ladies who now live.

ich wil ir des den prîs geben:

I will to-her of-that the prize give:

1510

michn dunket kein sin alsô guot.

me seems no sense so good.

ichn weiz wiez ander liute tuot:

I-not know how-it other people do:

spricht ab iemen 'wie der tobet,

(if)-says however anyone 'how he raves,

daz er sî über mâze lobet,'

that he her beyond measure praises,'

der selbe ist âne rehten sin,

he self is without right sense,

1515

ob ich niht gar ein tôre bin.

if I not wholly a fool am.

sî wil mir wol gefallen:

she will to-me well please:

ichn weiz wie in allen.

I-not know how to-them all.

dæhte ab niemen alsô,

should-think however no-one so,

entriwen, des wær ich vil frô:

in-truth, of-that would-be I very glad:

1520

wan sô ahte niemen ûf sî,

for so would-beed no-one upon her,

alsô belibe sî mir frî.

so would-remain she for-me free.

die rede hân ich durch schimph getân

the speech have I for jest done

und wil ir gerne wandel hân:

and will for-it gladly amends have:

- 1525 **ichn weiz zwiu mir daz solte**
I-not know what-for to-me that should
- daz nieman enwolte,**
which no-one would,
- od waz ich dâ suochte**
or what I there sought
- des nieman geruochte.**
which no-one cared-for.
- durch daz sî tugende ist volkomen,**
for that she of-virtue is perfect,
- 1530 **als ich sihe und hân vernomen,**
as I see and have heard,
- sô mac mir dehein nôt**
so can to-me no distress
- âne den gemeinen tôt**
except the common death
- den willen erleiden**
the will make-bateful
- noch mînen muot gescheiden**
nor my spirit part
- 1535 **hinnen fürder von ir.'**
hence forward from her.'

The Heart's Last Counsel

X

The heart is glad they now agree and advises patience, since a hasty rider is overtaken by a steady one. A lady may withhold her favor for a time, and women often lose good friends by leaving them in doubt. The body tells the heart not to grieve over others' troubles. The heart's last lesson is constancy, like a drop of water that wears through stone, and it sends the body to the lady as their advocate.

‘Lîp, der rede genâde ich dir.

‘Body, for-the speech thank I thee.

ich hân nû êrste vernomen

I have now first heard

daz wir wol zesamen komen

that we well together come

und daz uns glîcher ernst ist.

and that to-us equal earnest is.

nû sûme ez ouch ze deheiner frist

now delay it also at no time

unde merke waz dû tuo.

and mark what thou do.

grîf vil stæteclîchen zuo,

grasp very constantly to,

als der dâ beherten wil

as he-who there hold-out will

die miete ûz unz an daz zil,

the hire out until to the goal,

und kum niht gâhes an sî,

and come not hastily at her,

daz ir dîn gewerp bî

lest her thy wooing by

unstetelîchen wone.

inconstantly dwell.

1540

1545

dâ erkennet sî dich vone

there recognizes she thee from

in stæteclîchem muote:

in constant spirit:

1550 des vergiltet dir diu guote.

for-that repays thee the good-one.

Unrehtez gâhen sûmet dich.

Wrong haste delays thee.

lîp, dâ bî erkenne ich

body, there by recognize I

die dâ niugerne sint.

those-who there curious are.

die platzent gâhes als ein wint

they burst hastily as a wind

1555 mit rîterschefte an einen man:

with knightly-deeds at a man:

die wenkent ouch schiere dan.

they swerve also soon away.

des jener niht entuot

which that-one not does

der stæte ist und wol gemuot.

who constant is and well minded.

vil schône der ersprenget,

very finely he rides-hard,

1560 als im state verhenget,

as to-him opportunity allows,

mit vil bliuclîchen siten,

with very bashful manners,

und hât den gâhen schiere erriten.

and has the hasty-one soon overtaken.

der hebt dan ûf und hât verlorn,

he pulls then up and has lost,

iedoch mit blutigen sporn.

nevertheless with bloody spurs.

Ich wil dir noch mêre sagen.

I will to-thee yet more tell.

1565

dû solt dar umbe niht verzagen,

thou shalt there about not lose-heart,

ob sî dir ein wîle erban

if she thee a while grudges

daz dû sîst ir dienstman:

that thou be her serving-man:

wan wirbest du ez mit sinnen,

for (if)-woost thou it with wits,

dû maht dar nâch gewinnen

thou canst there after gain

1570

bezzet heil, und ist sî guot.

better weal, and (if)-is she good.

wan ich sage dir der wîbe muot:

for I tell thee the women's spirit:

sî habent benamen einen site

they have assuredly a custom

dâ sî sich dicke mite

where they for-themselves often with

âne nôt verliesent,

without need lose,

1575

den sî ze gesellen kiesent

whom they as companion choose

unde in ze liebe erwelent,

and him in love elect,

daz sî dâ mite entwelent

so-that they there with delay

unz sichs diu werlt verstêt,

until itself-of-it the world understands,

und ob ez nimmer ergêt,

and if it never comes-about,

1580

daz man ez doch für wâr hât.

that one it yet for true holds.

daz machet wislôser rât.

that makes unwise counsel.

der frume wirt niht mêre,

the profit becomes not more,

wan der schade an êre.

but the harm to honor.

1585 Welch wünne ein wîp dâ mite hât

What delight a woman there with has

daz sî ir friunt sô lange lât

that she her friend so long leaves

an zwîvellichen sorgen,

in doubtful cares,

die sint mir gar verborgen.

those are to-me wholly hidden.

ez ist ein unbescheiden site,

it is an unreasonable custom,

1590 ir friunt verderbent sî dâ mite

their friend ruin they there with

und sûment guote minne:

and delay good love:

daz wirt in dran ze gewinne.'

that becomes to-them thereby as gain.'

 'Herze, ich hœre dich klagen

'Heart, I hear thee lament

daz dû wol möhtest verdagen:

what thou well mightest keep-silent:

1595 dû wirst von fremden leiden alt.

thou becomest from foreign sorrows old.

daz dû mir hât vor gezalt

what thou to-me hast before told

von wîbes unbescheidenheit,

of women's unreasonableness,

daz lieze ich den wesen leit
that would-let I to-those be sorrow

den dâ schade von geschiht.
to-whom there harm from befalls.

leider die sîn wir niht:
alas those are we not:

1600

ez ist der sælegen ungemach.
it is the blessed-ones' discomfort.

wie lützel uns des ie geschach
how little to-us of-that ever befell

dar umbe sich vil maneger senet!
which about himself very many-a-one longs!

dû bist sô harte niht verwenet,
thou art so very not spoiled,

dû möhtest dir wol sanfte leben.
thou mightest for-thyself well gently live.

1605

sî nement dich niht ze râtgeben,
they take thee not as counselor,

jâ bist dû ze rihtære
indeed art thou as judge

in vil unmære.
to-them very indifferent.

dâ von solt dû dîne klage
there from shalt thou thy lament

lân, und wellest dû, sô sage
leave, and (if)-wilt thou, so tell

1610

mir etewaz mêre
me something more

daz gezieh ze guoter lêre.
that tend to good teaching.'

‘Lîp, ich gibe dir hie an
‘Body, I give thee here on

die besten lêre die ich kan.
the best teaching which I know.

- 1615 wis stæte, deist der beste list,
be constant, that-is the best cunning,
 und merke, swie herte ist
and mark, however hard is
 ein stein, ob er etwâ lît
a stone, if it somewhere lies
 daz ein tropfe ze aller zît
that a drop at all time
 emzeclîchen drûf gât,
diligently thereupon goes,
- 1620 swie kleine kraft ein tropfe hât,
however little strength a drop has,
 er machet durch den stein ein loch.
it makes through the stone a hole.
 lîp, daz kumet iedoch
body, that comes nevertheless
 von des trophen krefte niht:
from the drop's strength not:
 von der emzekeit ez geschiht
from the diligence it happens
- 1625 daz er dicke vellet dar.
that it often falls there.
 dâ bî solt dû nemen war,
there by shalt thou take heed,
 und wellest dus geniezen,
and (if)-wilt thou-of-it profit,
 sô lâz dichs niht verdriezen,
so let thee-of-it not irk,
 dun dienest ir unz ûf die stunt
thou serve her until to the hour
- 1630 daz ir dîn dienst werde kunt.
that to-her thy service become known.

ist sî denne ein guot wîp,
(if)-is she then a good woman,

sich, sô lônet sî dir, lîp.
look, so rewards she thee, body.

Ouch behalt dû dînen glimph,
Also keep thou thy decorum,

daz sî in ernest ode in schimph
lest she in earnest or in jest

von dir daz wort iht verneme,
from thee the word at-all bear,

daz sî zeheime hazze neme,
so-that she in-secret hatred take,

und ervar ir willen swâ dû kanst,
and learn her will wherever thou canst,

ob dû dir sælde und heiles ganst.
if thou to-thyself fortune and weal grantest.

nû sûme dich niht mêre:
now delay thyself not more:

ich bevilh dir unser êre,
I entrust to-thee our honor,

unser heil stêt an dir:
our weal stands on thee:

nû solt dû lîp hin zir
now shalt thou body thither to-her

unser fürspreche sîn.
our advocate be.'

‘daz tuon ich gerne, herze mîn.’
‘that do I gladly, heart mine.’

1635

1640

The Song to the Lady

XI

In a closing song the body speaks to the lady. Love has kindled its heart, misfortune has bitten it like a dog, and only her hand can heal the wound. Without her all lands are exile, and she is its goddess. It likens its plight to swimming far from shore, pledges its soul for its faithfulness, and begs her to end its waiting before despair takes it. It gives body and soul into her power, to live for her and for no other woman.

1645 Swaz kumbers ich unz her erleit

Whatever affliction I until now suffered

sît ich sorgen begunde,

since I to-grieve began,

daz was ein senftiu arebeit

that was a soft hardship

unz an dise stunde.

until to this hour.

minne mich noch ie vermeit,

love me yet ever avoided,

1650 sî was mir unkunde:

she was to-me unknown:

nû hâts ir kraft an mich geleit,

now has-she her power on me laid,

wan sî mir senfte erbunde,

for she to-me gentleness grudged,

als ir wære niht ze leit

as-if to-her were not too sorrowful

ob mir gar geswunde:

if to-me wholly should-faint:

1655 wan sî mir alsô an gestreit

for she to-me so against strove

daz sich mîn herze enzunde.

that itself my heart kindled.

nâch dir, frouwe vil gemeit,

after thee, lady very joyous,

brinnet ez von grunde:

burns it from ground:

des solt dû nemen mînen eit,

of-that shalt thou take my oath,

geloube mînem munde.

believe my mouth.

1660

mîn gedanc ist nâch dir breit:

my thought is toward thee broad:

ob mich dîn gnâde enbunde,

if me thy grace should-unbind,

ich wær dir immer mê bereit

I would-be to-thee ever more ready

swes ich gedienen kunde.

whatever I serve could.

mir erban der die kristenheit

to-me grudges he-who the Christendom

1665

vil gerne verslunde,

very gladly would-swallow,

swære die mîn herze treit,

grief which my heart bears,

ob diu an mir erwunde.

if it in me should-cease.

von ungelücke niemen seit

of misfortune no-one tells

der des nie befunde:

who of-it never experienced:

1670

unheil mir über den wec schreit

ill-luck to-me over the way strode

gelîch einem hunde:

like a dog:

ze vaste ich mich dar ûf verreit,

too hard I myself there upon rode,

daz schadet mir an gesunde:

that harms me in health:

1675 sîn zant mich sêre versneit,

its tooth me sorely cut,

mir bluotet noch diu wunde.

for-me bleeds still the wound.

Als ich der wunden enphant,

When I the wound felt,

dô nam mîn freude ein ende.

then took my joy an end.

mîn liep vor leide nâch verswant:

my joy for sorrow nearly vanished:

1680 wer ist der daz leit swende?

who is he-who that sorrow may-end?

ze sorgen ist ez mir gelant:

to cares is it for-me landed:

frowe, daz erwende.

lady, that avert.

jâ vlîzet sich der vâlant

indeed strives himself the devil

daz er mîn heil geschende.

that he my weal may-ruin.

1685 ze guote bist dû mir genant,

for good art thou to-me named,

swie ich mîn dinc gelende.

however I my affair may-end.

durch got solt ez dir sîn erkant,

for God shall it to-thee be known,

wær ich in oriende,

were I in the-East,

wie mich dîn tugent überwant.

how me thy virtue overcame.

durch daz sô ginende,

through that so venture,

od ich lebe als ein erloschen brant:

or I live as a quenched brand:

sô brinnent ander brende.

so burn other brands.

jâ frument mir deheiniu bant

indeed profit me no bonds

âne dîn gebende:

without thy binding:

mich heilet niemannes hant

me heals no-one's hand

wan dîne hende:

but thy hands:

mirn werde trôst von dir gesant,

unless-to-me become comfort from thee sent,

ichn weiz wer mir in sende.

I-not know who to-me it send.

nû dîner gnâden wis gemant.

now of-thy grace be reminded.

daz ich mich der gimende

that I myself of-it may-rejoice

ê mir der zwîvel neme ein phant

before from-me the doubt take a pledge

und mich des lîbes phende.

and me of-the body may-rob.

ich hân den muot alsô gewant,

I have the spirit so turned,

swie ich daz gewende,

however I that may-turn,

daz mir ân dich alliu lant

that to-me without thee all lands

sint ein ellende.

are an exile.

1690

1695

1700

1705

Nâch heiles gnâden ich ie ranc:

After weal's grace I ever strove:

wær sîn lôn gewære!

were its reward sure!

von allen sælden ez mich dranc.

from all fortune it me pressed.

1710 nû ist mir undære

now is to-me unwelcome

daz mir dar an noch nie gelanc:

that for-me there in yet never succeeded:

unheil was mir gevære.

ill-luck was to-me hostile.

des habe ich selten gelfen sanc:

of-that have I seldom loud song:

dâ mite ich daz bewære.

there with I that prove.

1715 von sînem hazze ich nâch versanc,

from its hatred I nearly sank,

und ouch versunken wære,

and also sunk would-have,

des half mir, daz ich niht ertranc,

of-that helped me, so-that I not drowned,

gedinge ûf liebiu mære.

hope for dear tidings.

der trôst mich ie ze lahter twanc,

the comfort me ever to laughter compelled,

1720 wan ich noch wol ginære,

for I still well may-survive,

ob dû mirs woltest wizzen danc

if thou to-me-for-it wouldst know thanks

durch dînen schepfære,

for thy Creator,

daz mir ein süezer umbevanc

that to-me a sweet embrace

vor kumber fride bære

from affliction peace should-bring

von dînen armen, die sint blanc:

from thy arms, which are white:

1725

sô wurde ich sorgen lære.

so would-become I of-cares empty.

und habe dir des deheinen wanc,

and (if)-have-(I) toward-thee of-that any wavering,

sô sî ich got unmære,

so be I to-God indifferent,

dich meint mit triwen mîn gedanc,

thee means with faithfulness my thought,

und beweget dich niht mîn swære.

and moves thee not my grief.

1730

mîner nôt wære ein berc ze kranc:

for-my distress would-be a mountain too weak:

ob sî mich diuhte swære,

if it me should-seem heavy,

sô würde mir daz leben ze lanc

so would-become to-me the life too long

daz ich sîn gerner enbære.

that I of-it more-gladly would-do-without.

Sît ich dîn künde ie gewan,

Since I of-thee knowledge ever got,

1735

sô bist duz alters eine

so art thou-it quite alone

der ich mir ze frowen gan:

whom I to-me as lady grant:

nû lobest duz al ze seine.

now praisest thou-it all too slowly.

vil dicke ich sældelôser man

very often I fortuneless man

1740 in mînem herzen weine

in my heart weep

daz ich den kumber dankes han

that I the affliction willingly have

gebunden zuo dem beine

bound to the leg

für den ich listes niht enkan

for which I of-cunning not know

wie ich in versweine.

how I it may-weep-away.

1745 daz ich ûz wîben ie began

that I out-of women ever began

minnen deheine

to-love any

von der mîn muot sô sêre bran

for whom my spirit so sorely burned

als ich ir bescheine,

as I to-her show,

diu mir freude gar enban

who to-me joy wholly grudges

1750 (diu sippe ist ungemeine),

(the kinship is uncommon),

des dulde ich alsô herten ban,

of-that endure I so hard ban,

ez erbarmet einem steine.

it moves-to-pity a stone.

got enhelfe mir noch dan,

God unless-help me yet then,

mîn ruowe wirt noch kleine.

my rest becomes still little.

1755 an gedingen, des mir nie zeran,

in hope, of-which to-me never ran-out,

ze trôste ich mich noch leine.

for comfort I myself still lean.

wider dich bin ich valsches wan,

toward thee am I of-falsehood free,

mit triwen ich dich meine:

with faithfulness I thee mean:

dâ lâz mich niht verliesen an

there let me not lose by

durch dîne tugent reine.

for thy virtue pure.

1760

Mîn frumen mir vil sêre schât:

My profit to-me very sorely harms:

jâ lebe ich sam ich swande

indeed live I as-if I swam

den tiefen sê, dan man hât

the deep sea, whence one has

verre ûz ze sande

fâr out to sand

(den het sælde heim gelât,

(him had fortune home led,

ob in got ûz gesande).

if him God out sent).

sîn liegen snîdet sam ein grât,

his lying cuts like a fishbone,

swer dich ie guot genande.

whoever thee ever good named.

ob mich mîn dienst niht vervât,

if me my service not avails,

die sêle ich gibe ze phande

the soul I give as pledge

daz mîn triwe niht zergât,

that my faithfulness not passes-away,

1765

1770

wan der schade bræhte schande.

for the harm would-bring disgrace.

mîn muot ze solher wîse stât

my spirit to such manner stands

daz ichz mir gerne enblande.

that I-it for-me gladly charge.

1775 ich wæn noch lîhter den Phât

I think yet sooner the Po

allen verbrande,

entire would-burn,

daz sîn ninder dehein schrât

so-that of-it nowhere any spray

flüzze in dem lande,

should-flow in the land,

ê daz ich dîn getæte rât:

before that I of-thee should-do without:

1780 dâ von sô ist mir ande,

there from so is to-me grief,

ob mich unerlæset lâ

if me unreleased leaves

dîn trôst von solhem bande.

thy comfort from such bond.

deist ouch diu grœzist missetât

that-is also the greatest misdeed

diech noch an dir erkande.

which-I yet in thee perceived.

1785 An freude gedulde ich armuot

In joy endure I poverty

in grôzer armüete.

in great poverty.

sorgen bin ich unbehuot,

from-cares am I unguarded,

vor den mich got behüete.

from which me God guard.

waz frumet mich des sumers bluot

what profits me the summer's blossom

mit missevarwer blüete?

with ill-colored flowering?

1790

jan ruoche ich ob der boume guot

indeed-not care I whether the trees' green

immer mêre grüete,

ever more should-green,

dun genâdest mir und sîst mir guot

unless-thou grant-grace to-me and be to-me good

durch wîpliche güete.

for womanly goodness.

nâch dir hân ich mich verwuot:

after thee have I myself gone-mad:

1795

ê ich gar verwüete

before I wholly go-mad

(lacuna)

(lacuna)

jâ macht mich zwîvel ungemuot

indeed makes me doubt ill-spirited

mit sînem ungemüete,

with its ill-mood,

1800

daz mich dunkt wie mir daz bluot

that me seems as-if to-me the blood

lige an einer glüete,

lie on a glow,

wan ich des tiefen meres fluot

for I the deep sea's flood

mit sîner breiten flüete,

with its broad flooding,

- 1805 swie in vil selten iemen wuot,
however it very seldom anyone waded,
 für disen kumber wüete.
before this affliction would-wade.

Ich bin unmæzeclichen wunt:
I am immeasurably wounded:

schaden ich enphinde
barm I feel

geslagen in des herzen grunt,
struck into the heart's ground,

- 1810 daz ichz niht überwinde.
so-that I-it not overcome.

an freuden wurde ich ungesund,
in joys become I unhealthy,

des tôdes ingesinde,
of-the death household-member,

mirn tuo dîn gnâde hilfe kunt,
unless-to-me make thy grace help known,

daz sô mîn leit verswinde.
so-that so my sorrow vanish.

- 1815 deheines arzâtes bunt,
any physician's bandage,

swie rehte wol er binde,
however very well he bind,

mir frumet niht, gæbe ich tûsent phunt
to-me profits not, should-give I a-thousand pounds

daz ich senfte vinde:
that I relief find:

gebiutetz aber dîn rôter munt,
(if)-commands-it however thy red mouth,

- 1820 sô genise ich swinde.
so am-bealed I swiftly.

sô nem mich sælde sâ zestunt
so take me fortune straightway at-once

* * *

(lacuna)

* * *

(lacuna)

* * *

(lacuna)

* * *

(lacuna)

1825

daz er noch erblinde.
that be yet go-blind.

Gedinge tuot mich dicke balt:
Hope makes me often bold:

als ich des beginne,
as I of-that begin,

zwîvel tuot mîn herze kalt
doubt makes my heart cold

dâ wider zungewinne.
there against for-loss.

1830

ich wæne ê wazzer unde walt
I think sooner water and forest

und diu erde verbrinne
and the earth burn-up

(deist zuo dem suontage gezalt)
(that-is to the judgment-day counted)

und uns der tage zerinne,
and to-us of-the days run-out,

möhte ich werden alsô alt,
might I become so old,

1835

ê ich von dir die sinne

before I from thee the senses

benim: swie lützel ez noch galt,

take: however little it yet availed,

ich diene umb dîne minne.

I serve for thy love.

frowe, durch daz sô behalt,

lady, for that so keep,

1840 als ich an dich gesinne,

as I toward thee aspire,

an mir dîn tugent manecvalt.

in me thy virtue manifold.

ichn weiz war ich entrinne:

I-not know where I may-escape:

des nim mîn sorge in dîn gewalt,

therefore take my care into thy power,

wan dû bist mîn gotinne.

for thou art my goddess.

1845 Frowe, nû bedenke daz

Lady, now consider that

ê sich dîn trôst verspæte,

before itself thy comfort delay,

daz ich dîn noch nie vergaz

that I thee yet never forgot

ze frumeclicher stæte.

in valiant constancy.

nû lâz gein mir den bæsen haz

now let toward me the evil hatred

1850 niht schaden noch bæse ræte:

not harm nor evil counsels:

ja ist manec triwelôsez vaz
indeed is many-a faithless vessel

daz anders niht enbæte
which otherwise nothing would-desire

wan daz ez gerner dan sîn maz
but that it more-gladly than its meal

freudewende hæte
joy-ending bad

unde im sanfter denne baz
and to-it more-softly than better

kein werltwünne tæte.
no world-delight should-do.

der selbe ist zallen tugenden laz,
he self is in-all virtues slack,

ze den untugenden dræte,
to the vices quick,

und ran (daz ich noch ie ensaz)
and ran (which I yet ever dreaded)

dâ in doch niemen sæte.
where him yet no-one sowed.

1855

1860

Ist daz ich mînen langen wân
(if)-Is that I my long expectation

nâch heile volbringe
toward weal accomplish

den ich nâch dînen minnen hân,
which I after thy love have,

als ich an got gedinge,
as I in God hope,

sô hât er wol ze mir getân
so has he well to me done

an gnædeclîchem dinge,
in gracious thing,

1865

und bin im lōnes undertân

and am to-him in-reward subject

dem sage ich unde singe.

to-whom tell I and sing.

ouch muoz ich immer riwec stân,

also must I ever rueful stand,

1870 ezn sî daz mir gelinge.

unless-it be that for-me succeed.

nû solt dû daz an mir begân

now shalt thou that toward me practice

daz dich hebe ringe

that thee raise lightly

und dînem herzen erbarmen lân

and to-thy heart pity let

daz ich mit sorgen ringe.

that I with cares struggle.

1875 Frowe, jâ hât dîn strît

Lady, indeed has thy strife

sünde an mir begangen,

sin in me committed,

sît ich began, daz mich niht sît

since I began, so-that me not since

dîn gnâde hât enphangen.

thy grace has received.

swer guoten friunden freude gît,

whoever to-good friends joy gives,

1880 wen solte des belangen?

whom should of-that weary?

jâ bedarf in sîner zît
indeed needs in his time

vil baz gelangen
much better to-succeed

dan der angstlîchen lît
than he-who in-anguish lies

ûf den lîp gevangen.
on the body captured.

schadet mir iemannes nît,
(if)-harms me anyone's envy,

wan wære er erhangen!
why-not were he hanged!

1885

Wær ich ze heile geborn,
Were I to weal born,

des solte ich geniezen.
of-that should I profit.

die ich ze frowen hân erkorn,
her-whom I as lady have chosen,

swaz der wort mich hiezen,
whatever of-her words me bade,

daz wurde unlange verborn.
that would-become not-long neglected.

ob mîniu werc daz liezen,
if my works that should-leave,

sô dulte ich mînes herzen zorn.
so would-endure I my heart's anger.

daz wil ich entsliezen:
that will I unlock:

von sîme gebote hân ichs gesworn,
by its command have I-it sworn,

esn sol mich niht bedriezen.
it shall me not irk.

1890

1895

Nû ger ich daz diu güete dîn

Now desire I that the goodness thine

ir namen an mir êre,

its name in me honor,

daz mir genâden werde schîn.

so-that to-me grace become evident.

1900 frowe, lâ niht mêre

lady, let not more

nâch dir daz gemüete mîn

after thee the spirit mine

ringen alsô sêre.

struggle so sorely.

jâ muoz mîn lîp dîn eigen sîn

indeed must my body thy own be

nâch getriwes herzen lêre.

according-to faithful heart's teaching.

1905 Dîn spil ist mir geteilet sô

Thy game is to-me divided so

daz ich noch erwerbe

that I yet win

des mîn herze wirdet frô,

of-what my heart becomes glad,

od gar an freude ersterbe.

or wholly of joy die.

daz ist mir ein swæriu drô,

that is to-me a heavy threat,

1910 wiltû daz ich verderbe.

(if)-wilt-thou that I perish.

Ich hân in dîn gewalt ergeben

I have into thy power given

die sêle zuo dem lîbe.

the soul with the body.

dienphâch: jâ müezen sî dir leben

them-receive: indeed must they for-thee live

und mê deheinem wîbe.'

and more no woman.'
